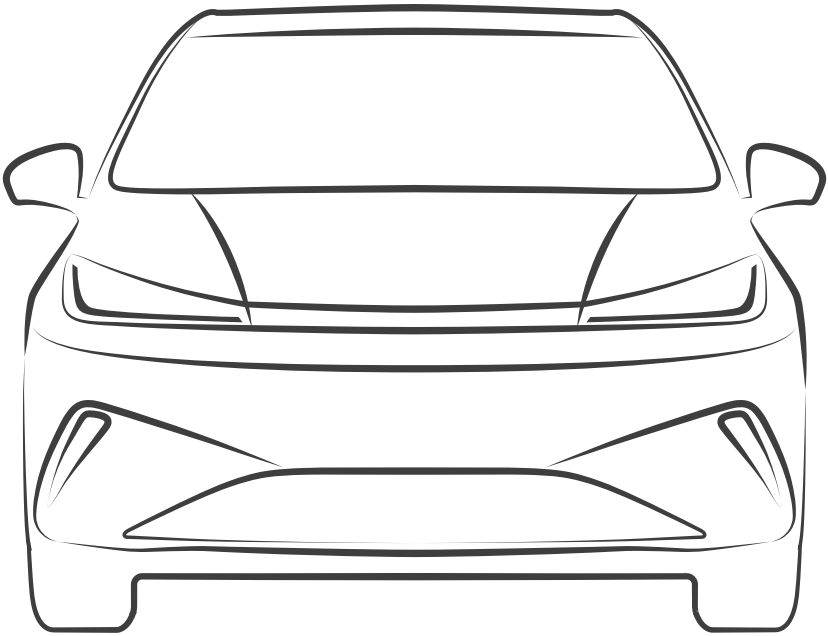
BYD DOLPHIN G
DM-i

OWNER'S MANUAL



Foreword

Thank you for choosing BYD. To better use and maintain the vehicle, please read this manual carefully and keep it for future reference.

Special instructions: BYD recommends that you choose genuine spare parts and use, maintain, and repair the vehicle in accordance with this manual. The use of non-genuine spare parts to replace or modify the vehicle will affect the performance of the entire vehicle, especially its safety and durability. Vehicle damage and performance issues caused thereby will not be covered by the warranty. In addition, vehicle modifications may also violate national laws and regulations and local government regulations.

Thank you again for choosing BYD. Your valuable comments and suggestions are welcome. To enjoy better services, please provide your accurate contact information. If there is any change to the information, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider in a timely manner to update the information in the system. You are also advised to pay attention to the relevant national laws and regulations and local policies, and register the vehicle as soon as possible; otherwise vehicle registration may fail.

The descriptions marked with the asterisk (*) in this manual are specific to only some model configurations, and applicable only when the vehicle has these configurations. If there is any difference with the vehicle you purchased, the configuration of the actual vehicle shall prevail.

Pay attention to the "WARNING", "CAUTION", and"REMINDER" symbols in this manual, and follow the instructions carefully to avoid injury or damage. These symbols are defined as follows:

WARNING

Items that must be observed to ensure personal safety.

CAUTION

Items that must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle.

REMINDER

Items that must be observed to facilitate maintenance.

is a safety mark to indicate an operation that should not be performed or an event that should not happen.

This manual is expected to help you use the product correctly, and does not provide any description of the configuration and software version of this product. For details about the product configuration and software version, please refer to the contract (if any) related to this product, or consult the dealer who sold the product to you.

Sustainability

As a new energy passenger vehicle, BYD Dolphin G is an environmentally friendly product. Please visit https://reach.bydeurope.com for environmental protection information about the vehicle.

Everyone has the responsibility to protect the environment. Please use this vehicle properly and dispose of any waste and cleaning materials according to the corresponding local laws and regulations.

Contact Us

If you require assistance or clarification on policies or procedures, please contact the customer relationship centre.

E-mail: Autoservice.contact@byd.com

Call 00800-10203000 for 24/7 roadside assistance or customer service centre (9:00–18:00 Monday–Saturday).

Copyright © BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

No part of this document may be reproduced, copied, stored, translated, or transmitted electronically or in any other form without prior written consent and authorisation of BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd.

All rights reserved

Illustration Index

Exterior.....7

Dashboard..... 8

Interior..... 9

Doors..... 10

Safety

Seat Belts.....12

Seat Belt Overview..... 12

Using Seat Belts.....12

Airbags..... 15

Airbag Overview..... 15

Airbag Types..... 16

Airbag Triggering Conditions..... 17

Child Restraint Systems..... 21

Child Restraint System Classification.....21

Installing Child Restraint Systems..... 22

Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System.....26

Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode.....26

Working Modes Selection of Dual-Mode (DM) System.....27

Precautions for Dual-Mode System Working Mode.....28

Anti-theft Alarm System.....30

Anti-theft Alarm System.....30

Data Collection and Processing..... 32

Data Collection and Processing.....32

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster..... 38

Instrument Cluster View.....38

Instrument Cluster Indicators.....40

Controller Operation

Doors and Keys.....52

Keys.....52

Locking/Unlocking Doors..... 56

Smart Access and Start System..... 61

Child Protection Lock.....62

Seats.....63

Seat Precautions..... 63

Adjusting Front Seats..... 64

Folding Rear Seats.....65

Head Supports.....66

Steering Wheel..... 67

Steering Wheel Switches.....67

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....69

Wipers..... 70

Wiper Switch.....70

Replacing Wiper Blades..... 72

Mirrors.....73

Interior Rearview Mirror.....73

Side Mirrors.....73

Switches..... 74

Light Switches..... 74

Driver's Door Switches..... 77

Window Control Switch on Passenger's Side.....79

Front Passenger Airbag Switch..... 79

Hazard Warning Light Switch.....80

Emergency Call (E-Call).....80

Sunshade Switch*..... 81

Interior Light Switch.....82

Using and Driving

Charging/Discharging..... 86

Charging Instructions.....86

Charging....90
Discharging Instructions*....95
Target SOC Setting*....98
Charging Port Immobiliser System....99
Driving Range Display*....100
Batteries.... 101
High-Voltage Battery....101
Low-Voltage Battery....103
Usage Precautions.... 105
Break-in Period....105
Trailer Towing*.... 105
Driving Safety Precautions....106
Suggestions for Vehicle Use....106
Fuel.... 107
Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life....109
Carrying Luggage.... 110
Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning....111
Wading into Water....112
Fire Prevention....113
Starting and Driving....114
Starting the Vehicle.... 114
Auto Power On/Off*....116
Driving....116
Fuel-Efficient Driving....118
Gear Shift Controls....119
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)....120
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)....123
Driving Precautions....124
Driver Assistance.... 127
Driver Assistance System.... 127
Driving Assist.... 133
Forward Safety Assist....143
Side Safety Assist....156
Rear Safety Assist*....164
Driver Monitoring System (DMS).... 169
Child Presence Detection (CPD)*....170
Direct Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)....172
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)....173
Around View Monitor (AVM)*....174
Parking Assist.... 176
Driving Safety System.... 180

In-Vehicle Devices

Infotainment System.... 186
Infotainment Touchscreen....186
Infotainment System....187
Settings....187
Scene Mode*....188
BYD Assistant....188
Gestures and Responses....189
Bluetooth....190
OTA Update*.... 190
My Car*....190
Phone Projection*.... 191
A/C System.... 197
A/C Buttons....197
A/C Operation Interface.... 197
Function Definitions....198
Vents.... 200
BYD App.... 201
About BYD App*....201
Account Registration*....201
Vehicle Condition and Control*....201
Individual Centre and Vehicle Management*....202
Storage.... 202

Door Bins..... 202
Bill Box..... 202
Glove Box..... 202
Glasses Case*.....203
Glove Box..... 203
Centre Console Cubby.....203
Seatback Pockets*.....203
Cup Holder.....204
Other Devices..... 204
Sun Visor..... 204
Grab Handles..... 204
USB Ports..... 205
SD Card Slot.....205
On-Board Power Supply..... 206
Wireless Phone Charger*..... 206

Service and Maintenance

Maintenance Precautions.....210
Maintenance Cycle and Items.....210
Regular Maintenance..... 215
Regular Maintenance..... 215
Vehicle Corrosion Prevention..... 216
Paint Maintenance Tips.....217
Exterior Cleaning..... 218
Interior Cleaning.....219
Self-Maintenance.....221
Self-Maintenance..... 221
Vehicle Storage.....223
Bonnet..... 224
Engine..... 225
Cooling System.....226
Braking System.....226
Windscreen Washer.....227
A/C System.....227
Wiper Blades.....228
Tyres.....228
Fuses..... 231

When Faults Occur

When Faults Occur..... 234
Reflective Vest..... 234
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted.....234
If a High Voltage Fault Occurs..... 234
If the Vehicle Cannot be Powered on... 234
If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving.....235
If the Engine Is Overheated.....235
If the Vehicle Needs Towing.....236
If a Tyre Goes Flat..... 238

Technical Data

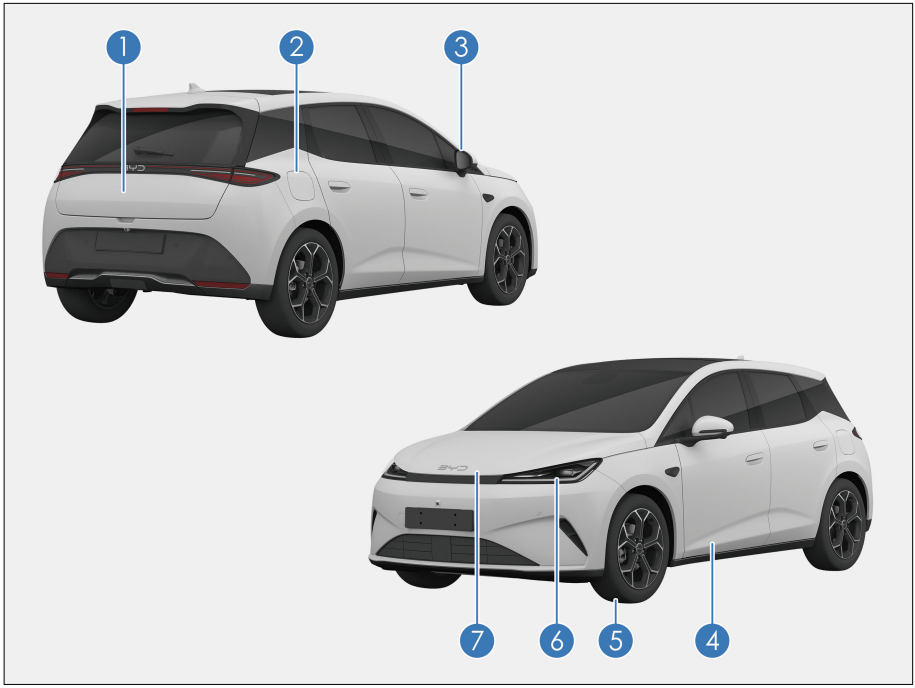
Vehicle Data..... 244
Specifications..... 244
Information.....249
Vehicle Identification..... 249
Warning Labels..... 250
Transponder Mounting..... 251
Declarations of Conformity..... 252
Declarations of Conformity.....252

Abbreviations

Abbreviations.....259

Illustration Index

Exterior



1 Boot ***P59***

2 Using Mode 2 Charging Cable ***P90***
Using AC Charging Piles* ***P92***

Using DC Charging Piles* ***P93***

3 Side Mirrors ***P73***

4 Doors ***P56***

5 Tyres ***P228***

If a Tyre Goes Flat ***P238***

6 Combination Lights ***P74***

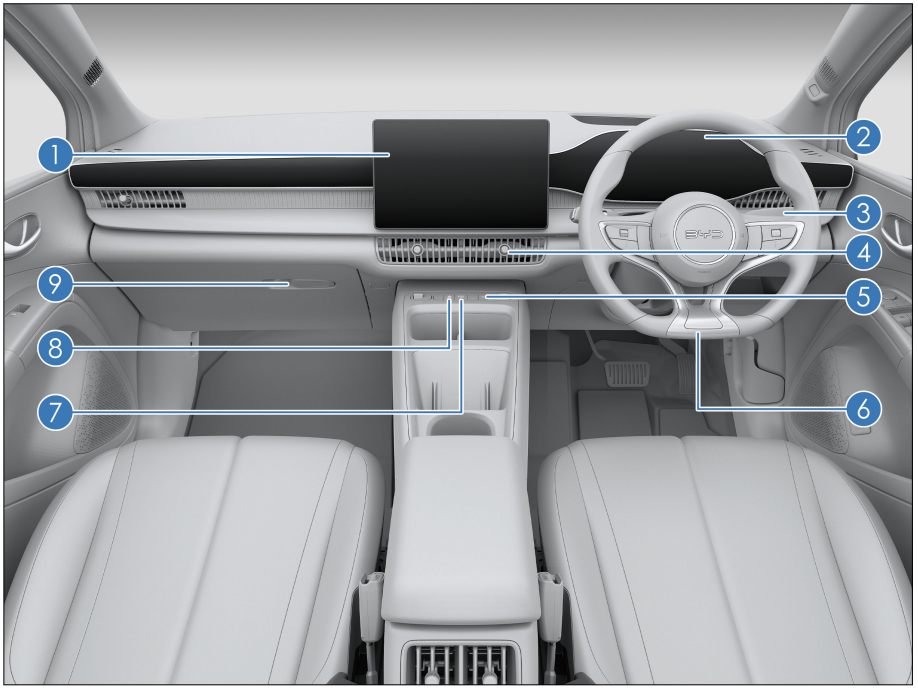
7 Opening the Bonnet ***P224***

Coolant ***P226***

Brake Fluid ***P226***

Washer ***P227***

Dashboard



1 Infotainment Touchscreen ***P186***

2 Instrument Cluster ***P38***

3 Light Switches ***P74***

Wiper Switches ***P70***

4 Front Vents ***P200***

5 A/C Buttons ***P197***

6 Adjusting the Steering Wheel ***P69***

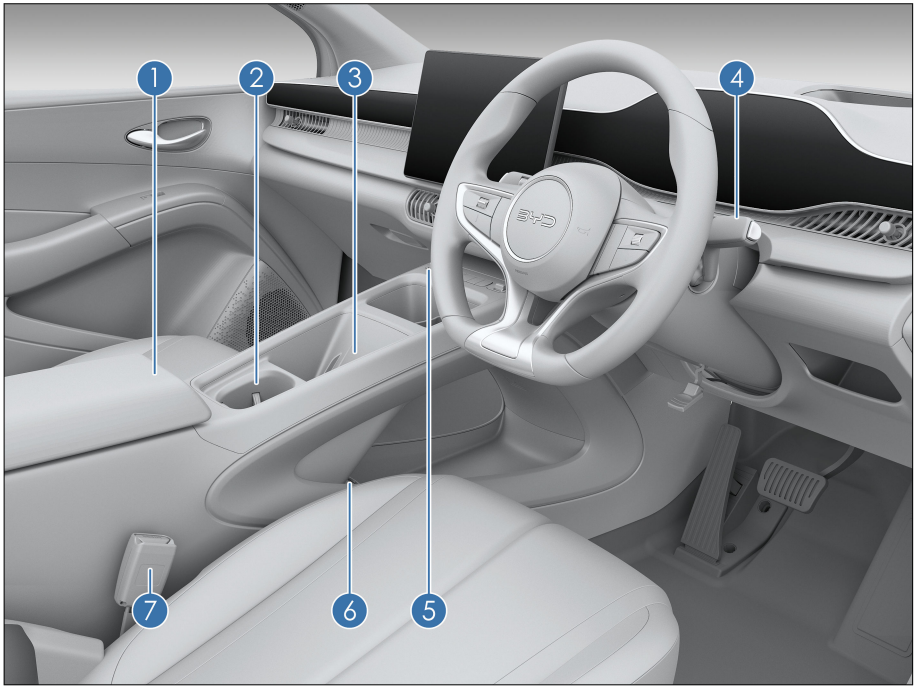
Steering Wheel Switches ***P67***

7 START/STOP Button ***P114***

8 Hazard Warning Light Switch ***P80***

9 Glove Box ***P203***

Interior



1 Centre Console Cubby ***P203***

2 Cup Holders ***P204***

3 Wireless Phone Charger ***P206***

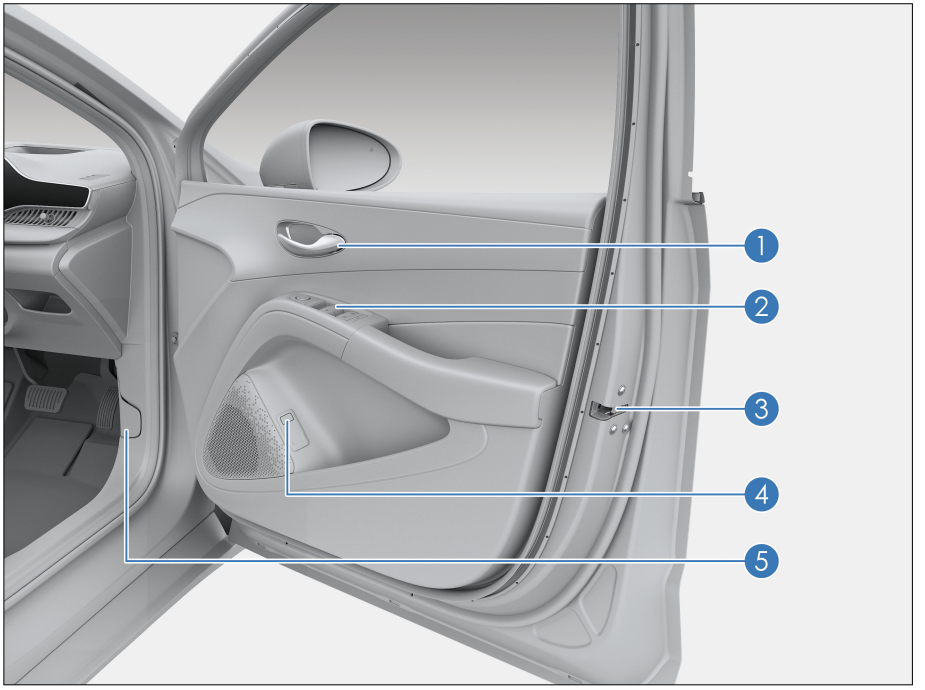
4 Gear Shift Controls ***P119***

5 Dual-Mode System Working Mode Button ***P27***

6 Front-Row USB Ports ***P205***

7 Using Seat Belt ***P12***

Doors



1 Opening with Interior Door Handle ***P56***

2 Power Window Switches ***P77***

Window Lock Button ***P78***

Central Locking ***P78***

Side Mirror Switches ***P73***

3 Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key ***P60***

4 Fuel Door Release Button ***P108***

5 Opening the Bonnet ***P224***

01 SAFETY

Seat Belts..... 12
Airbags..... 15
Child Restraint Systems..... 21
Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System.....26
Anti-theft Alarm System..... 30
Data Collection and Processing..... 32

Seat Belts

Seat Belt Overview

Studies have shown that proper use of seat belts can significantly reduce casualties in emergency braking, sudden steering, or collisions. Read the following information carefully and observe it strictly.

CAUTION

- Before driving, make sure all occupants are properly buckled up to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or in a collision.
- The seat belts are designed primarily to fit adults and are not intended for children. Make sure to choose a child restraint system appropriate for your child's age and size (see ***P21***).
- If a seat belt is damaged or malfunctions, immediately contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.

- BYD has highly emphasised that all occupants should always fasten their seat belts while in the vehicle to prevent serious injury or death.
- Children are encouraged to travel on the rear seats and must be buckled up in appropriate child restraint systems. In case of emergency braking or a collision, unprotected children may be seriously injured and their lives may be endangered. Never allow a child to ride on an adult's lap. This does not provide adequate protection.

Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR)*

- When the driver turns sharply or brakes suddenly, when there is a collision, or when the occupant leans forward too quickly, the seat belt automatically locks to effectively restrain and protect the occupant.
- When the vehicle travels smoothly, seat belts are pulled out and retracted as the occupants move slowly and smoothly, allowing the occupants to move freely.
- If the seat belt locks due to sudden retraction, pull on the seat belt webbing to create retractable slack in order to pull out the seat belt.

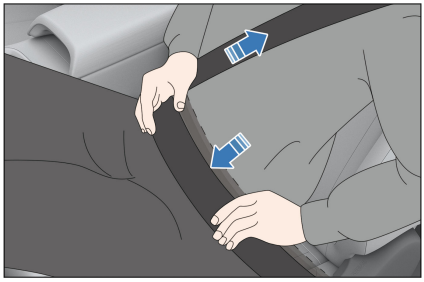
Pretensioner and Force Limiter*

When a severe front collision occurs and the triggering conditions of the pretensioner are met, the pretensioner quickly retracts part of the seat belt and locks it to improve the protection of the occupant. The force limiter limits the seat-belt restraint force to the occupant's body to a certain extent so as to avoid injury to the occupant due to an excessive restraint force.

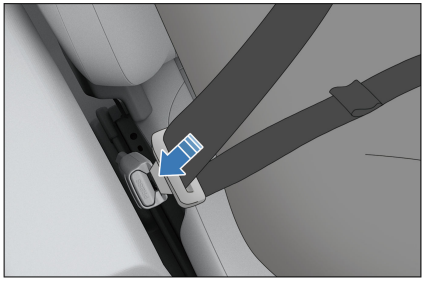
Using Seat Belts

1. Adjust the seat position and seatback recline (see Adjusting Front Seats).
2. Adjust the position of the three-point seat belt.

- Keeping a proper sitting posture, pull the seat belt out so that it is diagonally across the chest. The belt should not go under the arm or across the back of the neck.
- Keep the lap section of the belt as close as possible to the hips.



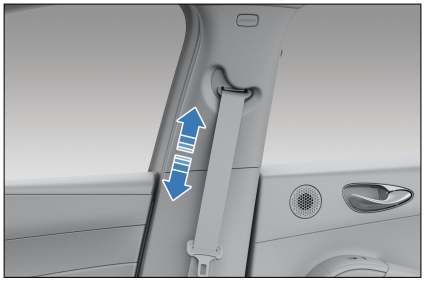
3. Insert the latch into the buckle until it clicks, and then pull it back to make sure it is firmly locked. Do not fasten the belt with any part of the strap twisted.



4. Adjust the height of the (front) seat belts for optimum comfort and protection.

① Press the adjuster release button.

② Move the adjuster up or down to the intended position. Release the button to lock the adjuster.



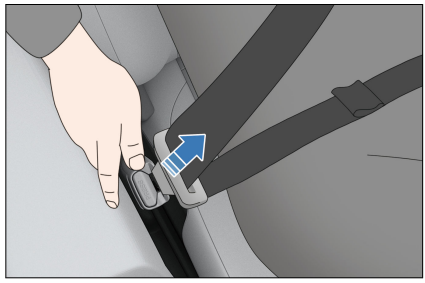
5. Pull the belt firmly to check that the adjuster is locked.

WARNING

- The shoulder belt should cross the centre of the shoulder. The seat belt should be far from the neck and not liable to slip from the shoulder; otherwise, it cannot function well in the event of emergency braking or accident and may even cause severe injury.
- The lap belt should be positioned as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury due to the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The seat belt should be fitted tight to the body for better protection.

6. Unlock the seat belt

- Press the red unlock button on the buckle. The latch plate pops out, and the seat belt automatically retracts.
- If the seat belt does not retract smoothly and automatically, pull it out and check whether it is twisted.



WARNING

- One seat belt is for one occupant only. Do not allow multiple occupants (including children) to share one seat belt.
- Avoid travelling with the seatback leaning too far back. The more

WARNING

upright the seat back, the better the protection.

- Make sure that no seat belt or its spring bolt/buckle becomes pressed by the door; otherwise, the seat belt may be damaged.
- Check the seat belts regularly for cuts, wear, looseness, and other abnormalities. If any problem is found, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.
- Do not remove, disassemble or modify the seat belts.
- After an accident, have the seat belts checked at a BYD authorised dealer or service provider. If the pretensioner function is activated, the seat belt must be replaced. Use an approved model whenever you replace the seat belt.
- In the event of a serious accident, even if there is no apparent damage, the seat belt should be replaced along with the seat assembly. The airbag system should also be thoroughly inspected.
- Pregnant women need to fasten the seat belts properly and position the lapbelt as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury from the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The method of wearing a rear seat belt is the same as that for a front seat belt. For normal functioning of the rear seat belt, ensure that its latch is inserted into the corresponding buckle

WARNING

during use. The driver should remind passengers to wear seat belts properly.

- Do not insert foreign objects such as coins and clips into the buckle as they prevent proper connection between the latch and buckle.

Seat Belt Reminders

If any occupant has not buckled up after the vehicle is started, alarms go off and continue until the corresponding seat belt is properly fastened.

- Seat belt reminder main indicator
  - The unfastened seat belt will trigger the main indicator to flash.
- Display of unfastened seat belt*
  - The indicator for the corresponding seat will light up to display the position of the unfastened seat belt.
- Seat belt reminders
  - If the driver or any passenger has not buckled up after the ignition is switched on, the main seat belt reminder indicator and the indicator for the corresponding seat light up. When the vehicle is in motion and the driver or any passenger has not buckled up, the seat belt reminder indicator flashes and an audible alarm is given.
  - When the driver and all the passengers fasten the seat belts, the main indicator and the corresponding seat indicator turn off.

WARNING

- In the event of abnormality or function failure, contact

WARNING

a BYD authorised dealer or service provider. Do not use the corresponding seat until the functions return to normal.

- When driving, make sure all occupants have their seat belts properly fastened to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or in a collision.

Airbags

Airbag Overview

- The airbag system is a part of supplemental restraint system (SRS) and also a supplement to seats and seat belts. When the vehicle is involved in a serious collision and the airbag system meets its deployment conditions, relevant airbags will rapidly deploy and, along with seat belts, provide additional protection for heads and chests of the occupants to reduce the risk of personal injury or even death.
- Airbags are divided into front and side types according to the type of collision in which they are designed to deploy. The front airbags include a driver airbag and a front passenger airbag, and the side airbags include front seat side airbags and curtain airbags.
- As an integral part of the vehicle's passive safety protection system, the airbag system is not a replacement for seat belts and must be used in combination with seat belts to maximise protection.

WARNING

- Occupants must sit in a proper position to maximise the protection provided by seat belts and the airbag system.
- Do not disassemble or assemble airbag components.
- Non-BYD genuine seat covers may worsen the airbag performance or result in injury.
- Do not place anything between the side airbag and the occupant.
- Do not apply excessive force to the side of seats equipped with side airbags.
- After a crash, even if the airbag did not deploy and the pretensioner did not lock the seat belt, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible to ensure that the airbag system functions correctly.

Airbag fault warning light

- The airbag system is monitored by the ECU and has a self-diagnostic function. The system status is indicated by the warning light on the instrument cluster.
- With the ignition on, if the airbag warning light stays on for about five seconds and then disappears, the system is running smoothly.

WARNING

- The airbag warning light stays on in the presence of certain system faults. If this light stays on, head to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible. Otherwise, airbags may not work properly.

WARNING

- In case of water ingress (such as wet carpet or vehicle submersion) or vehicle damage from water, do not switch the ignition on and make sure to have the low-voltage battery disconnected. Failure to

WARNING

do so risks serious injury or death due to airbag deployment.

Airbag Types



① Driver and Front Passenger Airbags

② Front side airbags

③ Curtain airbags

Driver and Front Passenger Airbags

The driver airbag is mounted inside the steering wheel and the front passenger airbag is mounted inside the dashboard, both marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the airbag deploys to reduce the risk of injury.

Front airbag deployment

- In moderate to severe frontal crashes, a sensor detects a sharp deceleration and sends a signal to the ECU to trigger the front airbags.
- When there is a frontal crash, the seat belt secures the occupant's lower body and torso and the airbag cushions

and protects the occupant's head and chest.

- When the severity of the impact does not reach the airbag deployment threshold, seat belts provide enough protection.
- The front airbag deflates immediately after inflation, without affecting the driver's vision and ability to operate the steering wheel or other controls.
- Airbags can inflate rapidly when triggering conditions are satisfied to further protect drivers and occupants in an accident.
- A loud noise will be heard when the airbag deploys. It will not cause injury but may cause tinnitus or temporary deafness.
- The deployment of airbags may release smoke and dust. Although these substances are non-toxic, passengers with respiratory conditions may experience temporary discomfort. If the discomfort is severe, seek medical attention immediately.

WARNING

- No accessories, such as telephone holders, cups, ashtrays, may be installed on airbag covers or within their action range. Otherwise, airbag deployment will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Front Side Airbags

The front seat side airbags are mounted on the outside of the front seatbacks, marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected with the ignition on and the triggering conditions are met, the side airbag deploys to protect the occupant's chest.

WARNING

- Do not allow the seatback to become wet, as moisture may impair the proper operation of the side airbags.
- Do not cover or replace the seatback covers by yourself. Using unsuitable or non-genuine seatback covers may interfere with side airbag deployment.
- When a side impact meets the system's deployment conditions, the side airbag on the impacted side will deploy.
- For optimum side airbag protection, the occupant must be buckled up and sit in an upright position.

Curtain Airbags

The left and right side curtain airbags are mounted at the junction of the body side trim and the ceiling and marked with "AIRBAG" on the A-pillar, B-pillar and C-pillar trims. When a moderate to severe impact is detected with the ignition on and the triggering conditions are met, the curtain airbags deploy to protect the heads of all vehicle occupants.

WARNING

- For optimum curtain airbag protection, the occupant must have their seat belt fastened and sit in an upright position.

Airbag Triggering Conditions

- Airbag triggering conditions: Airbags may only deploy in certain crashes, depending on factors such as crash

energy, crash type, impact angle, obstacle type, and vehicle speed.

- The airbag system does not always work in any accident, and generally it will not be triggered in the event of a minor frontal collision, rear collision or rollover. In this case, the driver and passengers are protected by their properly fastened seat belts.
- Determinants of airbag system triggering: The Electronic Control Unit (ECU) captures the deceleration curve and other signals of the vehicle during the crash. If they are lower than the threshold values set in the ECU, the airbag system will not be triggered even if the vehicle is seriously deformed in the accident.
- The ECU of the BYD airbag system has been set up with considerations of common misuse and road conditions. However, due to the increasing changes in causes and forms of vehicle collisions, for your safety, please strictly follow this user manual, use the vehicle correctly, and avoid its misuse. Otherwise, there is no guarantee that the airbags will achieve their expected effect.

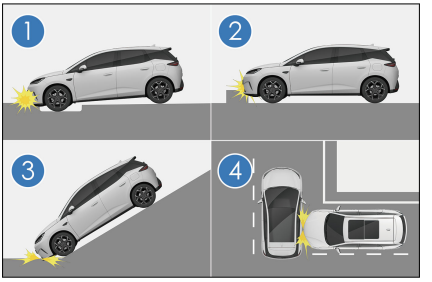
Cases When Airbags May Be Deployed

① The vehicle's nose hits the ground when crossing a deep groove.

② The vehicle hits a bump or kerbstone.

③ The vehicle's nose hits the ground when going down a steep slope.

④ One side of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.



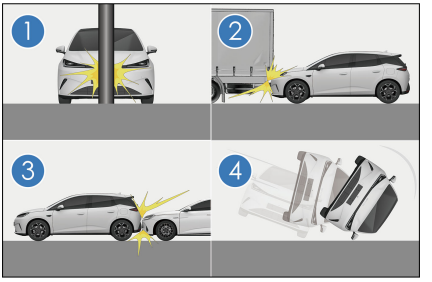
Cases When Airbags May Not Be Deployed

① The vehicle hits a concrete column, tree, or other slim objects.

② The vehicle goes under a truck or another large vehicle.

③ The tail of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.

④ The vehicle rolls over.

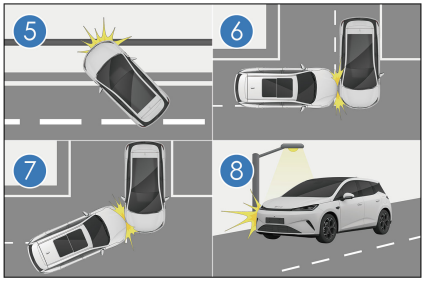


⑤ The vehicle hits a wall or a vehicle at a side other than the front side.

⑥ Parts other than the passenger compartment receive side impact.

⑦ The lateral side of the vehicle is hit diagonally.

⑧ The lateral side of the vehicle hits a columnar object.



WARNING

- Airbags are designed for specific models. Any changes to suspension, tyre size, bumpers, chassis and factory-equipped devices. Never use any parts of the airbag system on other vehicles; this may lead to failure of the airbag system and even the personal injury.
- Drivers should maintain a distance of at least 10 in (25 cm) between their chest and the steering wheel, in order for the system to provide the most effective protection.
- After the airbag system deploys, hot gas resulting from the reaction will be discharged from the airbag vent port. Avoid touching any parts and keep the correct posture of holding the steering wheel, otherwise skin burns may occur.
- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright while the vehicle is in motion. Airbag deployment heightens the risks of injury for unbelted occupants and those who are leaning forward or sitting improperly.
- Do not install, place, attach, or cover any accessories near airbags and their deployment areas, such as the hub cover of the steering wheel, surface

WARNING

of driver airbag cover, the dashboard area where the airbag is located, the windows, pillars, or ceiling. Otherwise, serious or fatal injuries may occur during airbag deployment.

- Clean these airbag surfaces with a dry or damp cloth, without applying too much pressure.
- A child is not to be seated without protection, nor are they to ride sitting on a front passenger's lap, to prevent serious injury or even casualty caused by airbag deployment.
- Side airbags and curtain airbags deploy quickly with high impact forces. Occupants must not lean against the doors when a vehicle equipped with these airbags is in motion. Failure to do so could result in serious injury or even death.
- Do not place any other accessories or items within the action range of side curtain airbags, including the windscreen, side door glass, A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim, C-pillar trim and auxiliary handles. When the side curtain airbag deploys, the accessories or items will be thrown by the impact force from the side air curtain airbag, or the side curtain airbag may not deploy normally, resulting in serious injury or even death.
- When transferring vehicle ownership, make sure to pass on all of the vehicle's documents and keep the new ownership informed of airbag conditions.

WARNING

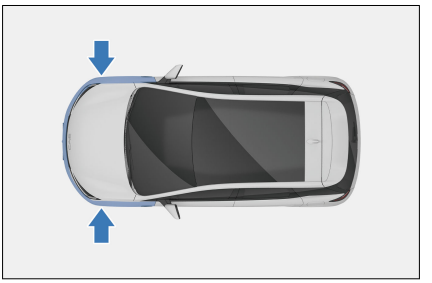
- Do not modify or replace seats or trims of the seats with side airbags. These changes may prevent normal deployment of side airbags, and thereby cause airbag system failure or unintended deployment of side airbags, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Do not disassemble or repair the A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim or C-pillar trim, which contain curtain airbags. These changes can cause failure of the airbag system or accidental deployment of curtain airbags, which may cause serious injury or even death.
- Do not change any component of the airbag system, including any corresponding label. It is recommended that any operation done to the airbags be performed by a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Airbags can only provide one-time accident protection. Once the airbag is triggered or damaged, the airbag system must be replaced.
- Follow safety regulations and procedures related to the scrapping of parts of the vehicle or its airbag system.
- The airbag system has strong anti-interference and anti-disturbance resistance to electromagnetic fields around it. However, to avoid accidents, do not use the vehicle in an electromagnetic environment that violates national regulations.

WARNING

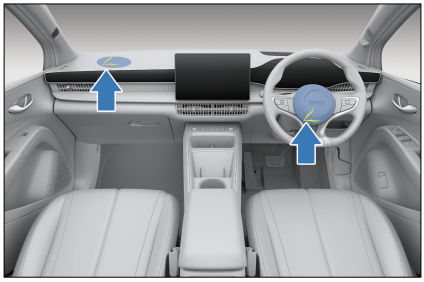
- The airbag system of this vehicle is designed with full consideration of common misuses and road conditions. However, in order to avoid accidents, do not have the bottom of the vehicle impacted or drive roughly in harsh road conditions.
- This vehicle's airbag system has been fully verified to match the vehicle's original wiring harness system. Any wiring harness modification or alteration may cause the airbags to deploy mistakenly under normal conditions or fail to deploy in the event of a collision.

It is recommended that you contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider immediately if any of the following situations occurs.

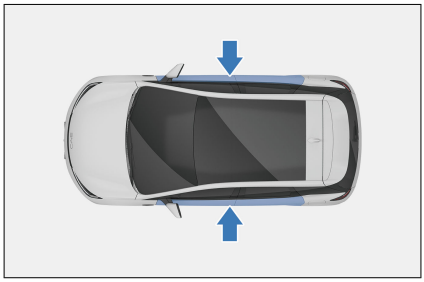
- Any airbag has deployed.
- The airbag warning light comes on abnormally on the instrument cluster.
- There is a collision with the front of the vehicle (highlighted area shown), but the airbags do not deploy.



- The airbag cover (highlighted area shown) has been scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.



- There is a collision with the vehicle doors (highlighted area shown), but the impact is insufficient to deploy the airbags.



- Airbags need to be removed, disassembled, installed or repaired.
- The surface of the seat with a side airbag is scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.
- Decorative trim on the A-pillar, roof side rail, and C-pillar associated with the curtain airbags is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

Child Restraint Systems

Child Restraint System Classification

- Choose a suitable child restraint system for your child's age and stature. A child who cannot use a protection device for size reason must sit in the rear seat and have the seat belt fastened properly.
- Please correctly fix the child restraint system to a seat, even if not used. Do not place it on a passenger seat or in the boot without fixing.

WARNING

- Be sure to use a seat belt or child restraint system for a child based on his/her age and size, so as to effectively protect the child in an accident or emergency stop. Holding a child in arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child may be crushed against the windscreen or between you and the cabin.
- Vehicle with side curtain airbags: Even though a child is in the child restraint system, do not allow his/her head or any other body part against any door, seat, front/rear pillar or roof side beam (which will be affected when side curtain airbags deploy). Otherwise, the considerable impact force generated when the curtain airbags deploy will cause serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- Please follow the installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer to make sure the child restraint it is properly installed in the vehicle. Otherwise, emergency braking or an accident may result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- Children are not allowed to stand in the vehicle or kneel on the seat when the vehicle is moving to

WARNING

prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or collision.

- Every child restraint system must be properly and safely installed. Researches indicate that it is safer to install child restraints on the rear seats than the front seats.

Important considerations for selecting a child restraint

- The type and size is suitable for the child.
- The type and size is suitable for the seating position.
- The child restraint must meet the ECE R129 standard.

Passenger airbag cut-off switch

- The switch is located on the passenger's side of the dashboard and is accessible when the passenger's door is open. See ***P79*** for details.

WARNING

- Never install a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated.

Installing Child Restraint Systems

The vehicle is equipped with ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages and top tether anchorages for child restraint systems. Follow the installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer.

Child Restraint System Anchorages

Follow the installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer. Secure the child restraint systems to rear seats. The rear seats are equipped with International Standards Organisation Fix (ISOFIX) anchors for child restraints. Make sure to fasten the top tether when installing a child restraint.

Rear outboard seats

- The rear outboard seats are equipped with ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages, located below the anchorage markings (see illustration) on the seat cushion.

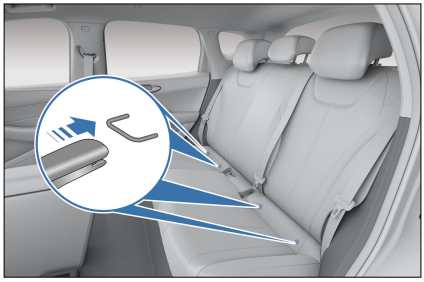


- The outboard rear seats are equipped with tether strap anchorages on the back.



Installing Child Restraint Systems

1. Check the ISOFIX/i-Size anchorage point and install the child restraint on the seat.



REMINDER

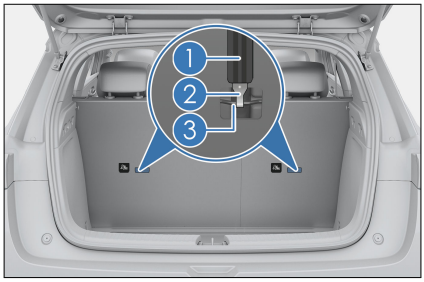
- The ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages are located at the opening in the rear end of the seat cushion.

2. Lift the head support, fasten the snap hook of the top tether strap to the anchor support, and tighten the top tether to ensure the strap is secure.

   ① Top tether

   ② Snap hook

   ③ Anchor support



3. Adjust the head support to a proper position.

- Never install a rear-facing child restraint on the seat protected by a front airbag (in the active state), otherwise in the event of an accident, the force of rapid deployment of the front passenger airbag will result in death or serious injury to the child.



WARNING

- When using the ISOFIX/i-Size anchorage, make sure that no foreign objects are around the anchoring point and that the seat belt is not stuck behind the child restraint; make sure that the child restraint is securely fixed. Otherwise, emergency braking or an accident may result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- Do not install a child restraint on the front passenger seat.
- Do not allow children to play with seat belts, otherwise, this could result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

REMINDER

- When installing the child restraint, if the seat in front of the child restraint interferes with the installation, adjust the position of the front seat to allow for proper installation.

REMINDER

- When installing the child restraint, the head support should be removed if it interferes with the fit of the child restraint seatback to the rear seats.
- When a child restraint is not equipped with the backrest, never remove the head support of the vehicle and be sure to adjust it to the locking position.
- For more installation instructions, please read the instructions provided with your child restraint system.

Seat belt, ISOFIX or i-Size CRS installing options in the vehicle

Type	Seating Position					
		Front passenger seat				
	Driver seat	Front Passenger Airbag Activated [a)]	Front Passenger Airbag Deactivated [a)]	Rear left	Rear middle	Rear right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	×	×	×	Yes	×	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	×	×	×	Yes	×	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	×	×	×	×	×	×
Largest suitable rearward-facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	×	×	×	R1/R2X/R2/R3	×	R1/R2X/R2/R3

Largest suitable forward-facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3 /No)	×	×	×	F2X/F2/F3	×	F2X/F2/F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3/No)	×	×	×	×	×	×

[a] If necessary, adjust the seat height and seatback angle of the front passenger seat to securely install the child restraint system.

[b] If necessary, adjust the height of the rear seat head support or remove it to avoid interference with the child restraint system. Do not remove the head support when using a booster cushion without a backrest. The front seats can be adjusted to ensure the child is not in contact with them.

×: seat position not suitable for installing a child restraint for this group.

- Recommended child restraint systems:

Child Stature	Manufacturer	Child Restraint System	Installing Method
16–33 in. (40–83 cm)	Maxi-Cosi	Pearl 360	Belted
0–41 in. (76–105 cm)	Britax Römer	Trifix 2 i-Size	ISOFIX and belted
39–59 in. (100–150 cm)	Britax Römer	Kidfix i-Size [a]	ISOFIX and belted
57–59 in. (137–150 cm)	Osann	Junior Isofix Gurtfix	Belted

[a]: For better protection, SecureGuard and XP-PAD are recommended.

Recommended child restraint systems for different height groups are shown in the illustration:

① 16–33 in. (40–83 cm)

② 30–41 in. (76–105 cm)

③ 39–59 in. (100–150 cm)

④ 57–59 in. (137–150 cm)

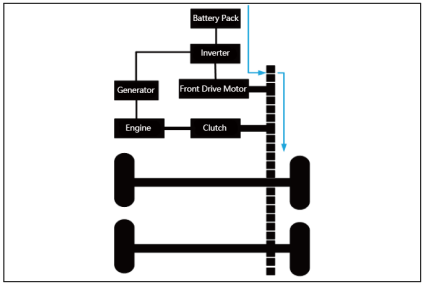


Working Modes of Dual-Mode (DM) System

Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode

EV—Pure Electric Mode

- In EV mode, the high-voltage battery supplies power to the motor to drive the vehicle under various driving conditions, such as starting, reversing, idling, accelerating, and cruising.

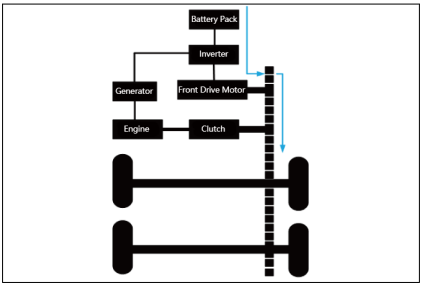


REMINDER

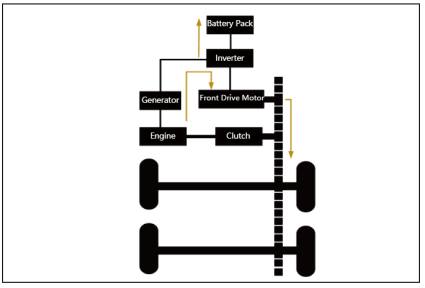
- The vehicle may automatically switch to HEV mode under certain conditions, such as rapid acceleration, high vehicle speed, climbing steep grades, or extremely high or low temperatures, as well as low SOC levels. When EV mode conditions are met, you may switch back to EV mode manually if needed. It is suggested to use HEV mode when high-voltage battery temperature is too high or too low.

HEV—Dual-Mode

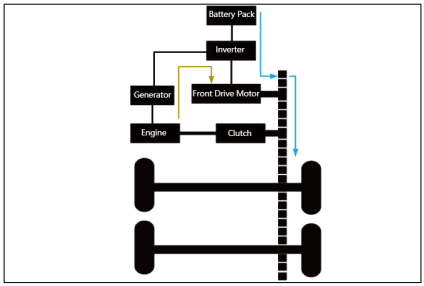
- In HEV mode, when the SOC is high or power demand is low, the engine remains off and the vehicle operates in EV mode.



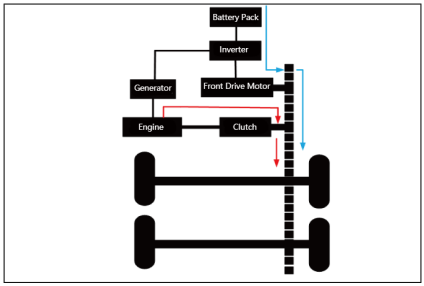
- In HEV mode, when the SOC is low or high power is required, the engine starts and operates in series mode to ensure sufficient power performance.
  - In HEV mode, the engine generates electricity to charge the battery and power the motor.



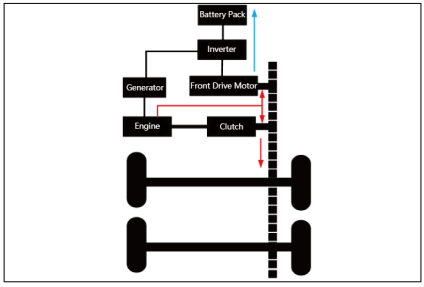
- In HEV mode, the engine generates electricity while the battery discharges to power the drive motor.



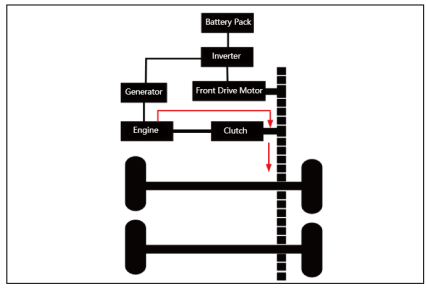
- In HEV mode, when the vehicle is travelling at medium or high speeds, the engine may operate in parallel under certain conditions to improve fuel economy:
  - In HEV mode, the engine and motor drive together.



  - In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle while the motor generates electricity for energy recovery.



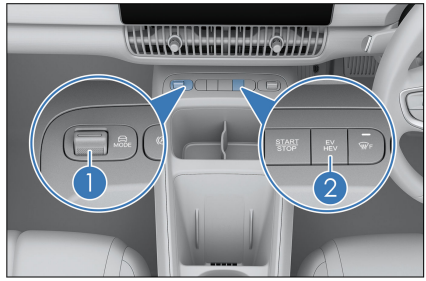
- In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle while the motor is inactive.



Working Modes Selection of Dual-Mode (DM) System

① "MODE" button

② "EV/HEV" mode button



EV-ECO mode:

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the ECO indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in ECO mode to minimise power consumption.

EV-NORMAL mode:

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Toggle the "MODE"

button continuously until the NORMAL indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in NORMAL mode to balance comfort and power consumption.

EV-SPORT mode:

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the SPORT indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in SPORT mode to ensure better dynamic performance.

HEV-ECO mode:

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the ECO indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in ECO mode to provide the best fuel economy.

HEV-NORMAL mode:

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the NORMAL indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in NORMAL mode to balance comfort and fuel consumption.

HEV-SPORT mode:

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the SPORT indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in SPORT mode to provide the best dynamic performance.

Snow mode

- Toggle the "MODE" button continuously to cycle through ECO, NORMAL, SPORT, and snow modes. When in snow mode, press the button a second time to exit the mode.
- Snow mode optimises the vehicle's traction, driving performance, and maneuverability on slippery roads, such as roads covered with grass, snow, ice, or gravel.
- For your safety, it is recommended to driver slower and press the accelerator pedal gently on slippery roads, even in snow mode.

WARNING

- Because ESC activation limits the engine torque, momentarily deactivating ESC may help if the vehicle is stuck in deep snow. The ESC system must be restarted after conditions are back to normal, see ***P180***.

Precautions for Dual-Mode System Working Mode

The vehicle operates using both gasoline and electric power. Pay special attention to the following points:

- In low temperature environment, the performance of high-voltage battery will decline. To prevent the high-voltage battery damaged, the following protection mechanisms are set:
  - When the temperature is low, the vehicle limits the charging and discharging power and SOC level.
- It is recommended to operate the vehicle in environments above

-20°C. In case of the above special environment, it is recommended to use the engine to drive the vehicle.

- The optimal operating temperature for battery is 25 °C. When the temperature is too high or too low, output power is limited and the pure electric driving range may be reduced.

Pay attention to high-voltage and high-temperature components

- High-voltage components, including the high-voltage battery, are connected by orange cables.

WARNING

- Do not touch orange cables or high-voltage battery terminals. Electric shock may cause serious injury or even death.
- Read all warning labels carefully.

- The motor, coolant radiator, and some other components may reach high temperatures during driving and therefore are labelled accordingly. Read all warning labels carefully and follow the instructions.

WARNING

- Do not remove or disassemble any high-voltage parts, otherwise serious or even life-threatening injuries may be caused.
- In case of collision, water immersion, or other situations that may cause damage to the high-voltage system, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider to avoid electric shock.
- If an electric leakage warning appears, or if a BYD authorised dealer or service provider has

WARNING

diagnosed electric leakage, do not continue using the vehicle.

- Do not touch parts with high voltage, so as to avoid electric shock caused by improper operation which causes serious injuries or even death.

- For the vehicle is driven by gasoline engine and electric motor, engine sound may be heard from the engine compartment.
- When the vehicle powers up or down, the sound of the high voltage component (the sound of contactor engagement or disengagement) may be heard under the auxiliary dashboard, which is not a fault.
- If the "OK" indicator lights up, the vehicle can be driven, even if the gasoline engine has not been started (driven by the motor only).
- Be sure to press the "P" button when parking. When the vehicle is in Park or Neutral and the SOC is low, the engine may start to charge the high-voltage battery. Do not hold the shift lever in Neutral, Reverse or Drive for too long, as it may trigger a false gear-stuck warning. Always release the lever after shifting. When leaving the vehicle, press the "P" button and make sure EPB is engaged, take away the key and lock all doors.
- If the low-voltage battery fails and is completely exhausted, even a 12V external power supply cannot perform a jump start, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- Always turn off the powertrain when leaving the vehicle.
- Be sure to press the "P" button when leaving the vehicle. Even when the engine is off (OK Indicator illuminated), the vehicle may move unexpectedly due to motor operation.
- When the "OK" indicator light is on, the vehicle may travel at a low speed when the vehicle is in Reverse or Drive without depressing the brake pedal. Pay attention to avoid accidents.

- Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for vehicle repair or maintenance.
- If the vehicle cannot be repaired due to accident or other reasons, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- For handling the sealed hybrid low-voltage battery, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- In the event of an accident, perform the following operations to reduce the risk of high-voltage electric leakage.
  - Move the vehicle to a safe place.
  - Depress the brake pedal and engage EPB.
  - Press the "P" button to stop the dual-mode system.
- If the vehicle is severely damaged, there may be a risk of electric shock. To avoid electric shock, do not touch any high-voltage components (such as battery assembly) or orange cables. Avoid touching exposed wires inside or outside the vehicle.
- If liquid leaks into components, do not touch as it may contain electrolyte from the low-voltage battery. If fluids contact skin or eyes, flush with plenty of water (preferably boric acid solution) and seek immediate medical attention.
- If the vehicle catches fire, use a electric fire extinguisher. Using only a small amount of water can be dangerous, so use plenty of water (such as a fire hydrant) or wait for the fire brigade.
- For towing, use four-wheel off-ground towing. If wheels touch the ground, the motor may generate electricity, leading to electric leakage.

Anti-theft Alarm System

Anti-theft Alarm System

Arming the system

1. The vehicle is powered off.
2. All occupants get off the vehicle.
3. Lock all doors. The anti-theft alarm system will arm automatically after 8 seconds.

Triggering the alarm

- The system, when armed, will raise an alarm* with flashing turn signals in any of the following situations:

- Any door, boot lid or bonnet is unlocked without using the smart key access function.
- Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.

Disarming the system

- Anti-theft alarm can be stopped by:
  - Unlocking the door or the boot lid with a valid smart key/NFC key/App.
  - Using the microswitch to unlock the door by carrying a valid smart key.
  - Starting the vehicle remotely with a valid smart key.
  - Pressing the START/STOP button inside the vehicle while carrying a valid smart key.

WARNING

- Do not repair, replace or modify the components of the anti-theft system; such modifications may cause the system to malfunction or affect the terms of the insurance.
- If a fault occurs, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Double Locking System

- The double locking system, when activated, prevents the doors from being opened from either inside or outside the vehicle.

Activating double locking

1. Switch the ignition off. Ensure all occupants exit the vehicle, and all doors, the boot, and the bonnet are closed.
2. Lock the vehicle with a valid smart key, the microswitch, a NFC key, the app, or the vehicle lock button on the boot lid.
3. Locking the vehicle will trigger the lights to flash once and the alarm to sound once. After 10 seconds, the anti-theft alarm system will arm with double locking activated.

Deactivating double locking

1. Unlock the doors or the boot with a valid smart key, the microswitch, a mechanical key, a NFC key, or the app.
2. Unlocking the vehicle will trigger the lights to flash twice, after which the anti-theft alarm system and the double locking system will be deactivated.

WARNING

- Do not activate the double locking system if someone is inside the vehicle. Doing so could trap the occupants, leading to serious injury or even death.

PIN to Drive

- To set a PIN to drive, shift into Park, then go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** and follow the on-screen instructions.
- When enabled, this feature requires entering the correct PIN on the infotainment touchscreen before vehicle gear can be shifted. If the vehicle anti-theft alarm system is armed because the PIN attempt limit is reached, follow on-screen instructions to disarm the system.
- When you forget the PIN, tap **forget password** and follow the instructions to change it.
- To disable the PIN, tap the settings then input the PIN.

⚠ CAUTION

- Register the BYD App and link the vehicle to BYD App's account before using this feature.
- Be sure to shift into Park before setting the PIN.
- PIN to drive works for unlocking with the smart key or the microswitch (smart key nearby), but not for such operations using the NFC key card* or from the BYD App.
- If you cannot input the PIN after powering on the vehicle due to infotainment touchscreen malfunction or black screen, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Data Collection and Processing

Data Collection and Processing

- This section provides you with some important information on how personal data is collected and processed when you use a BYD vehicle.
- For a more detailed overview on data processing, data protection and data subject rights, read the current version of the privacy policy for the vehicle available in the infotainment system (→ → **Privacy**).
- This vehicle is equipped with an event data recording (EDR) system. EDR mainly records data in the event of a crash or near-crash (for example, airbag deployment or hitting on a roadside obstacle) to help comprehend the vehicle system operation, such as:
  - Vehicle velocity
  - Tyre pressure condition
  - Adaptive cruise control (ACC) system status
  - Whether the seat belt is fastened
- The vehicle records EDR data only when there is a crash or when a near-crash event reaches a certain extent. The EDR does not record any data during the normal driving of the vehicle.
  - The data recorded by the EDR system provides an understanding of the state of the vehicle's safety-related systems when an accident occurs, so that relevant parties can analyze the accident.
  - The EDR data needs to be accessed and read by special equipment. BYD will not disclose your personal data to third parties unless this is legally permissible or you have consented to it. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third-party agencies with professional equipment (such as government agencies) can also read the EDR data if they have access to the vehicle EDR and equipment (for example, they can read the data of SRS control unit to clarify the accident).

Vehicle Data Processing

- Data is collected when the vehicle is used, such as data collected or transmitted by vehicle sensors or control units, which is necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle.
- In some cases, the data is used to support driving (driver assistance systems) or to enable a specific comfort or infotainment function.

- Personal data that is collected and processed mainly include in-vehicle data, remote-services-related data, and other data, as further specified below.

In-vehicle data

Operation data

- When the vehicle is used, various vehicle status data (concerning speed, battery level, and the braking system) or environment data (including distance sensors and temperature) are collected and processed.
- This data is not usually stored, but there are control units, sensors or other components installed in the vehicle that record such data, for example, to record maintenance requirements, error messages, or other information.
- The in-vehicle data will only be stored in the equipment in the vehicle but can be read out via the legally required OBD ("On Board Diagnostics") interface, for example, by BYD authorised dealer or service provider or other third parties.
- In case this access takes place during vehicle maintenance, the information can also be transmitted to BYD engineers for quality assurance, product defect reports, or customer claim verification.

Remote-services-related data

Remote monitoring services

- The vehicle has remote monitoring services. These include remote diagnosis and over-the-air (OTA) updates and upgrades for security and safety purposes (subject to owner's approval).
- These monitoring services serve the following purposes: service provision (remote support/diagnostics), product development, and security/public safety.
- Depending on the country and setup, various vehicle information can be transmitted to BYD's data centre in corresponding market for the above purposes, including vehicle location information, vehicle status, such as energy consumption, vehicle speed, gear position, power mode, ESC status, steering system status, battery status, powertrain status, and overall vehicle performance status.

Other

Infotainment system

- Depending on vehicle configuration, data can be added to the infotainment system by the users themselves, such as media data for playing video on the infotainment system, address data for use in the navigation system, or data for use in online services.
- Depending on vehicle configuration, individual settings in and on the vehicle can also be entered.
- Data stored in the vehicle can be deleted at any time.
- BYD has no control over data transferred to third parties (from the use of third party content, in particular as part of online services).

Integration of mobile devices

- Depending on vehicle configurations, mobile devices can be connected and controlled through the vehicle's infotainment system.
- It may be necessary that the device's screen or audio is displayed/played through the infotainment system or transmitted to it.
- Additional data like positioning or vehicle information can be transmitted through applications for use in certain

navigation systems, communication, or other third-party services.

- The specific type of data processing depends on the respective function and is controlled by the user or third parties such as the provider of the devices or corresponding services.

Internet access and connected services

- Depending on vehicle configurations, the Internet can be accessed for certain functions or BYD services through the vehicle's infotainment system network devices.
- BYD is not liable for any such services provided by any other party.
- In such cases, please obtain information about the use of data from the provider of the respective online service.

Camera image recording/surrounding area monitoring

- Your vehicle is equipped with a number of cameras/sensors.
- The reason for this is that some vehicle functionalities require the vehicle's path to be detected and assessed which is done by cameras that detect objects in the vehicle's surroundings such as obstacles.
- The images are transmitted to the respective control module for further analysis required to operate the systems.
- Some images are just processed on a volatile basis (RAM), others may be stored, depending on vehicle equipment.
- The vehicle may be equipped with an outward-facing camera (OFC) that can be used to take footage of the surrounding (for example, dashcam).
- The vehicle may also be equipped with an inward-facing camera (IFC), which can be used to take footage inside the vehicle.
- Both OFC and IFC footage is stored.
- You are responsible to check the laws of your residence before turning on your OFC or IFC (for instance, in some countries consent is required for the use of IFC, and in others OFC is strictly restricted to dashcam purposes).
- For more camera details, see Automatic Vehicle Monitor (AVM).

Permanent Vehicle Transfer to Third Parties and Offline Mode

- In case of a permanent vehicle transfer, that is, when you are purchasing a second-hand vehicle or receiving a vehicle transferred from a third party for permanent use, it must be noted that any personalisation/user settings made via the infotainment system (including the address list and the navigation system) can be accessed by the new owner.

REMINDER

- To protect your privacy, it is recommended to factory reset the vehicle before it is scrapped for disposal or transferred.

- You can also restrict your vehicle's communication with the BYD data server and the processing of vehicle-related and personal data by setting the vehicle to offline mode.
- On the infotainment touchscreen, tap Wi-Fi icon to turn wireless network off.
- Wi-Fi can also be turned off by the following ways: → → **Network & internet** → **Wi-Fi**.

Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities

- BYD will not disclose your personal data to third parties unless this is legally permissible or you have consented to it.
- However, subject to applicable laws, government agencies may be authorised to read out data from vehicles (for example, data can be read from the airbag control unit to clarify an accident).
- If required by law, BYD may also be obliged to disclose data upon request to governmental authorities in your country, such as in the investigation of a criminal offence.

Your Data Protection Rights

- BYD has staunch respect for its customer's privacy, and strictly complies with all data protection laws, in particular the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) and applicable local laws.
- According to these laws, owners have specific rights when their personal data is processed:
  - Data subjects have the right of information and access, to rectification, erasure of personal data ("right to be forgotten") and the right to object to the processing of personal data or to restrict it (or to withdraw consent given earlier, as well as the right to data portability).
- These rights may be limited in some cases. For example, if we can show that we have a legal obligation to process your data, or if providing the information to you would disclose personal data about another person, or if we are legally prevented from disclosing that information.
- In some cases, this may mean that we can retain the data even if you withdraw your consent.

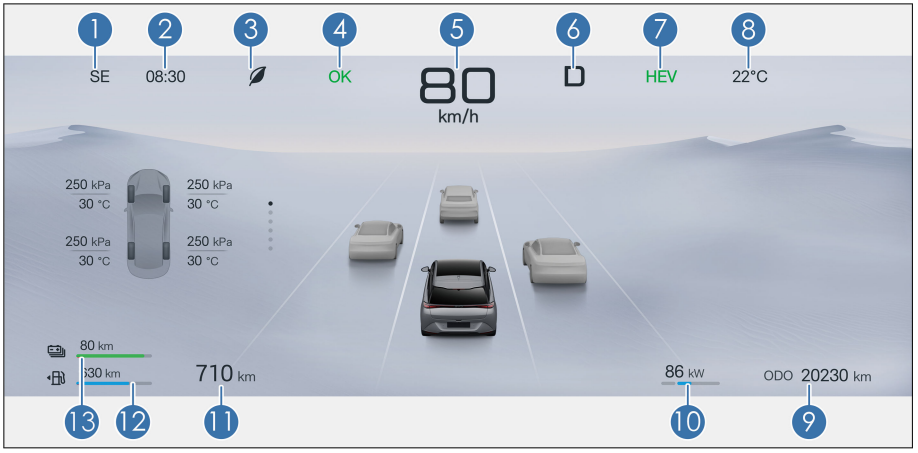
02 INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Instrument Cluster.....38

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster View

Instrument Cluster



1 Direction
2 Time
3 Driving mode
4 OK
5 Speedometer
6 Gear status
7 Power mode
8 Outside temperature
9 Total mileage
10 Power meter
11 Driving range
12 Fuel gauge
13 State of charge (SOC)

CAUTION

- When the instrument cluster experiences occasional communication delays, it may automatically switch to simple mode for safe driving. In this mode, essential driving information remains displayed and vehicle operation is not affected. The system returns to normal mode automatically once communication recovers. If it does not, try the following steps to switch back to normal mode:

  1. Press and hold the scroll button on auxiliary dashboard for three seconds to restart the instrument cluster information display system.

CAUTION

2. While safety is ensured, power cycle the vehicle.

- If the instrument cluster remains in simple mode after those actions have been taken, promptly contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection.

CAUTION

Simplified mode*



REMINDER

- During occasional communication delays in the instrument cluster system, the instrument cluster may automatically switch to simple mode for safe driving. In this mode, the instrument cluster continues to display driving-related information normally without affecting normal vehicle travel. After the system becomes normal, the instrument cluster may automatically exit the simple mode. If it does not, try the following actions to switch back to normal mode:
- Press and hold both the scroll button on the right side of the steering wheel and the right button for three seconds to restart the instrument cluster information display system.
- While vehicle safety is ensured, operate the vehicle power switch to turn off the vehicle and then turn the ignition on.
- If the instrument cluster remains in simple mode after those actions have been taken, promptly contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection.
- The image of the instrument cluster view is for reference only and is subject to actual factory configuration.

REMINDER

Instrument Cluster Indicators

Indicators/Warning Lights

Indicator	Name	Indicator	Name
	Turn signal indicator		Position light indicator
	Discharge indicator		OK indicator
	GPF regeneration indicator*		dipped beam indicator
	EV indicator		HEV indicator
	AVH on		HDC indicator

Indicator	Name	Indicator	Name
	ICC active indicator*		Forced EV indicator
	AFL indicator*		High beam indicator
	ACC working indicator*		Lane support system indicator*
	Towing mode indicator*		AVH standby indicator
	AEB fault warning light*		BSD fault indicator*
	AVAS OFF indicator		Driving power limit indicator
	GPF regeneration fault warning light*		Rear fog light indicator*
	Low tyre pressure warning light		Oil life monitoring indicator
	Smart key warning light		Main alarm indicator
	ESC OFF warning light		ESC fault warning light
	Headlight fault warning light		Engine fault warning light
	ABS fault warning light		High-voltage battery low SOC warning light
	Low fuel warning light		ICC fault warning light*

Indicator	Name	Indicator	Name
	Lane support system fault warning light*		LDA off indicator*
	ELKA fault indicator*		ELKA off indicator*
	TSR off indicator*		TSR fault warning light*
	AEB warning light*		Motor overheating warning light
	Speed limit indicator*		Powertrain fault warning light
	Parking brake system fault warning light		Seat belt indicator
	Airbag fault warning light		Steering system fault warning light
	Coolant overheating warning light		Low oil pressure warning light
	High-voltage battery charging connection indicator		Low-voltage power system fault warning light
	High-voltage battery overheating warning light		High-voltage battery fault warning light
	EPB indicator		Normal mode indicator
	Sport mode indicator		Economy mode indicator

Indicator/Warning Light Description

 Emission system fault warning light

- With the vehicle powered ON, this fault indicator is on for self-check. If on at any other time, it indicates that a certain control system of the vehicle may be faulty. Even if you may not notice any abnormalities, continuous

operation in this state may cause serious damage to the vehicle.

- If this warning light lights up when the vehicle is not in self-check, drive the vehicle to the roadside safely, power the vehicle off, and power it on again. Start the engine and inspect this warning light. If the light remains steady on, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible. Before the fault is identified at a BYD authorised dealer or service provider, drive carefully and avoid fully pressing the accelerator pedal or driving with high speeds.
- If the warning light lights up frequently, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection, even if it goes out after the above steps are followed.

CAUTION

- Continuous driving after the emission system fault warning light turns on may damage the emission control system and the engine.



Low fuel warning light

- This indicator is on the fuel gauge. If the indicator light is on, it indicates that the fuel level is low and about to run out. Refuel as soon as possible. When the fuel tank shakes on a slope or curve, the low fuel warning light may lights up earlier than usual.



Smart key warning light

- If no key is detected when you press the START/STOP button, this warning light comes on for a few seconds, a beep sounds, and the message "No key detected" is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- If you press the START/STOP button with a key detected, this warning light does not light up. The vehicle can be powered on and started normally.
- This warning light will disappear if the key is taken into the vehicle within a few seconds after the light turns on.
- If the warning light flashes after you press the START/STOP button, it indicates low battery of the key.



ABS fault warning light

- This warning light is steady on when the ignition is switched on. If the anti-lock braking system (ABS) is working properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. Thereafter, if the system fails, the light lights up again until the fault is cleared.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the parking brake system fault warning light off), the braking system continues to operate whereas ABS does not.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the parking brake system fault warning light off), since ABS does not operate, the wheels will be locked in case of emergency braking or braking on a slippery road.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by this warning light system. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light does not come on or is steady on when the ignition is on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

REMINDER

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If both warning lights for ABS and the parking brake system turn on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider. Braking at this time can render the vehicle unstable, given the malfunction of the ABS system.

- The ABS has a self-check function. If a malfunction occurs, the ABS fault warning light turns on, indicating an ABS failure. In this case, the brake system will still provide normal braking capability as in a conventional vehicle without ABS. However, under strong braking, the front or rear wheels may lock up, which could result in loss of steering control or skidding. If this occurs, especially in rainy or snowy conditions, avoid pressing the brake pedal forcefully to prevent loss of vehicle control. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- If the ABS warning light and the parking system warning light are on simultaneously, and the electronic parking brake is fully released, it indicates that the brake force distribution system between the front and rear wheels has also failed.
- If the brake pedal feels abnormal, take measures immediately. The braking system is dual-circuited, so partial failure cannot prevent the other two wheels from braking. In such a situation, you need to press the brake pedal deeper to slow the vehicle, and the braking distance becomes longer. Decelerate the vehicle and safely move it to the roadside. A longer braking distance can present serious driving hazards, so the vehicle must be towed away for immediate repair.
- If you have to drive a short distance under such conditions, proceed at low speed with extreme caution.



Tyre pressure fault warning light

- This warning light is steady on when the ignition is switched on. It turns off in a few seconds if the tyre pressure monitoring system is working properly. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again.
- When the TPMS warning light comes on or flashes, message "Please check TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster, and the tyre pressure reading is displayed as "---", it indicates that the tyre pressure system is faulty.
- When the tyre pressure value displays "No Signal", it indicates that the tyre pressure signal at this location may be interfered or the tyre pressure monitoring module is damaged.
- When the tyre pressure fault warning light is solid on and one or more values on the tyre pressure screen turn yellow, it indicates that the corresponding tyre is underinflated. When the temperature value of one or more tyres turns yellow, it indicates that the tyre temperature is too high.
- In the event of any of the situations above, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.



ESC fault warning light

- This warning light is steady on when the ignition is switched on. If ESC

functions properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again until the system fault is fixed.

- If the ESC warning light flashes temporarily while the vehicle is in motion, it indicates the ESC system is working.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking brake system fault warning light off), it indicates that ESC fails but the ABS and the braking system continue to operate normally.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking brake system fault warning light off), the ESC system does not work. This means the vehicle is extremely unstable at sharp turns or when the driver steers away from obstacles ahead.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by this warning light system. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light remains off (self-check not performed within 5 seconds) after the vehicle is powered on.
  - This warning light is steady on while driving.

REMINDER

- A warning light that lights up briefly during operation does not indicate a problem.
- If the ESC warning light remains on while the warning lights for the ABS and the parking brake system are on, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider. Braking at this time can render the vehicle unstable, given the malfunction of the ABS system.



ESC OFF warning light

- With the ignition on, this warning light turns on for a few seconds and then goes off.
- When the "ESC OFF" switch is turned on, the light should remain steady on and the ESC system will not operate. When the ESC OFF switch is pressed again, this warning light should turn off and the ESC system returns to normal.

REMINDER

- If the ESC OFF warning light is on, stay alert and maintain a slow driving speed in sharp turns and when avoiding obstacles. Braking at this time can render the vehicle unstable, given the malfunction of ESC system.



Driving power limit warning light

- When the motor power is limited, this warning light will light up, and it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider immediately.



Seat belt reminder indicator

- This warning light reminds the driver and the passenger to fasten their seat belts. With the ignition on, if either the driver or the passenger doesn't fasten

a seat belt, the corresponding seat belt indicator* will light up. It remains on until the seat belt is fastened.

 Airbag fault warning light

- With the ignition on, this warning light turns on and then off after a few seconds if the airbag system is working properly. This warning light is used to monitor the airbag ECU, collision sensors, inflation device, warning lights, connections, and power supply.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by this warning light system. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - When the ignition is switched on, this warning light remains off or is solid on after the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on or flashes during driving.

 Brake warning light

If any of the following conditions occurs, immediately park the vehicle at a safe place and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

This warning light lights up in the following conditions:

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on and the brake fluid level is low.

REMINDER

- When the brake fluid level is low, park the vehicle because it is dangerous to continue driving.

- When the engine is running, this indicator is solid on if the brake fluid level and EPB system operation are normal (the EPB is engaged and released normally, and the message "Please check the EPB" is not displayed).
- Fault warning lights for the parking brake system and ABS come on simultaneously. In this case, the parking brake system or the EPB may not work normally, lengthening the braking distance. Braking at this time can render the vehicle unstable, given the malfunction of the ABS system. Drive with caution.
- If this warning light lights up briefly during operation, it does not indicate a problem.

CAUTION

If any of the following conditions occurs, immediately park the vehicle at a safe place and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

- When the engine is running and the light is still on, the brake may malfunction, resulting in extended stopping distances. Firmly depress the brake pedal to initiate an emergency stop.

 Steering system fault warning light

- This warning light being solid on indicates an issue with the steering system. Bring the vehicle to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection.

REMINDER

- The steering system features an electric motor to reduce the force required to turn the steering wheel.

REMINDER

- You may hear a hum coming from the running motor when turning the steering wheel, which does not indicate a fault.
- Do not turn the steering wheel to its limit position for more than five seconds, otherwise the activation of temperature protection will result in heavy steering or damage the steering system.

- If you have turned the steering wheel frequently with the vehicle staying put for a long time, the steering wheel may become difficult to turn even if the warning light does not turn on. This is not a fault.
  - To prevent steering system overheating, the power assist effect will be reduced if the steering wheel has been frequently turned with the vehicle staying put for a long time. As a result, the steering wheel become difficult to turn. Lower the steering frequency or power off the vehicle. The system will recover within 10 minutes.

WARNING

- If the steering system warning light goes on, immediately park the vehicle safely, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.



Coolant overheating indicator

- When the power gear is "ON", this light is on, indicating that the coolant temperature is high. It is recommended to stop the vehicle for cooling. In harsh conditions, like hot season and long periods of hill climbing and high speed driving, the engine may overheat.



Low oil pressure warning light

- This light is about warning of low oil pressure. If this warning light flashes or remains on during driving, drive off the road, park the vehicle in a safe place, and shut down the engine immediately. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for help.
- When the engine is idling, this warning light may flash occasionally, or go on momentarily after emergency braking. When the engine is accelerating gradually, if this indicator goes out, the oil pressure is normal.
- This warning light goes on in case of very low oil level.

CAUTION

- Do not drive the vehicle when the warning light is on, even for a short distance. Otherwise, the engine may be damaged.



Low-voltage power system fault warning light

- If this warning light turns on while driving, it indicates that there is a problem with the charging system, DC system, or low-voltage power system. The engine can continue igniting until the battery runs out. In this case, turn off the A/C, fan, and the infotainment touchscreen, and drive the vehicle to the nearest BYD authorised dealer or service provider for maintenance as soon as possible.



Powertrain fault warning light

- If the powertrain fails, this warning light turns on.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by this warning light system. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

CAUTION

- Try not to drive the vehicle when the warning light is on. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider to check the problem as soon as possible.



High-voltage battery overheating warning light

- If this warning light is on, it indicates that the high-voltage battery temperature is too high and the vehicle must be stopped to cool down. When the warning light flashes, it is recommended to immediately stop the vehicle safely and leave the vehicle as soon as possible.
- The high-voltage battery may overheat under the following operating conditions:
  - Driving up a slope for a long time in hot weather
  - Long period of stop-and-go traffic condition, frequent rapid acceleration, frequent hard braking, or vehicle running for a long time without pause.



High-voltage battery fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on. If the high-voltage battery system is working properly, this warning light will turn off in a few seconds. If this light lights up again thereafter, it indicates a system failure. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a malfunction in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is on.
  - This warning light is steady on or occasionally turns on while driving.



AEB warning light*

- When this warning light is on or flashes, pay attention to the distance from the vehicle ahead, and do not get too close to it to prevent potential collision.



TSR indicator*

- When this indicator lights up, it means that the vehicle system has recognised the speed limit value on current road section.



GPF regeneration indicator*

- When the gasoline particulate filter (GPF) soot load (emitted particulate matter) reaches a certain level, the GPF will actively regenerate and the GPF indicator is solid green. Under suitable driving conditions, it is recommended to drive on highways as much as

possible to allow the particulates to be burned off. Once regeneration is complete, the GPF indicator light will turn off automatically.

 GPF regeneration fault warning light*

- When the gasoline particulate filter (GPF) soot load (emitted particulate matter) reaches its maximum capacity, fuel consumption increases, power performance decreases, and the GPF indicator is solid yellow. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection.

REMINDER

- If the vehicle is driven in EV mode for a long time, this function starts the engine for maintenance and a prompt is displayed on the instrument cluster: The engine has been started for maintenance.

Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts

The instrument cluster may display the following fault prompts. Handle them as recommended.

Indicator	Message	Response
	Please check the OBC system	The on-board charging system is faulty. Check the charging connection, and reconnect the charging equipment. If the fault persists, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	Check the vehicle network	The vehicle may be disconnected from the data network. Park the vehicle at a safe place immediately, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	Engine attachment limited	The engine system is faulty. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	Check headlight system	The headlight is faulty. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	AEB system is limited*	The automatic emergency braking (AEB) system is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle at a safe place, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	Check the BSD system*	The blind spot detection system for lane change is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle at a safe place, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	BSD is limited*	The BSD function is limited. In this case, park the vehicle at a safe place, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Indicator	Message	Response
	Function safety failure*	The instrument cluster connection is faulty. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
	Check the gear system	The shifter controller is faulty. In this case, park the vehicle safely, and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

03 CONTROLLER OPERATION

Doors and Keys.....52
Seats.....63
Steering Wheel.....67
Wipers..... 70
Mirrors.....73
Switches.....74

Doors and Keys

Keys

The vehicle is equipped with keys, including electronic smart key, mechanical key (installed in the electronic smart key), bluetooth digital key* and NFC key*.

Smart Key

Press the front door microswitch, while carrying the smart key, to unlock or lock all doors, or press smart key buttons to lock/unlock doors, unlock the boot, or start the vehicle remotely.

① Lock button

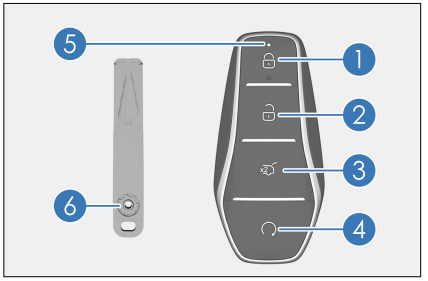
② Unlock button

③ Boot release button

④ Start/Stop button

⑤ Indicator

⑥ Mechanical key



WARNING

Button battery safety alert:

- The button (coin) battery in the smart key is hazardous and both new and used batteries are to be kept away from children at all times.
- If swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, a lithium button battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less.
- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the button battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

CAUTION

- The smart key is an electronic component. Observe the following instructions to prevent damage to the key:
  - Do not expose the smart key to high temperatures, such as on the dashboard.
  - Do not disassemble the smart key.
  - Do not let the smart key hit other objects or fall down.
  - Do not immerse the key in water or clean it in the ultrasonic scrubber.
  - Do not place smart keys with devices that emit electromagnetic waves, such as the mobile phone.
  - Do not attach to the smart key any objects (such as a metal seal) capable of cutting off electromagnetic wave signals.
  - You can register a spare key for the same vehicle. For details, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- If the electronic smart key cannot operate the door within the normal distance, or the key indicator light is dim or off:
  - Check for nearby radio stations or airport radio transmitters that interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
  - The smart key battery may be exhausted. Check the battery inside the electronic smart key. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for battery change.
- If the smart key is lost or fails, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider as soon as possible to reduce the risk of vehicle theft or accidents.
- Do not change the transmission frequency arbitrarily, increase the transmission power (including additional transmission frequency amplifier), or arbitrarily connect the external detection antenna or switch to other transmitting detection antennas.
- The use of the smart key must not cause harmful interference to legal radio communication services. Once interference is found, stop using the key immediately and take measures to eliminate the interference before continuing to use.
- The use of micropower radio equipment must endure the interference of various radio services or the radiation interference of industrial, scientific, and medical equipment.

CAUTION

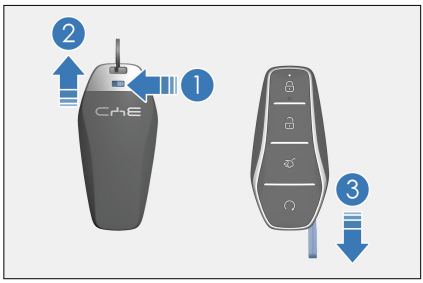
- Do not use it near airplanes or airports.
- People implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators should stay away from the detection antennas of intelligent entry and start systems, as electromagnetic waves can affect the normal use of such devices.
- In addition to people implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators, those who use other electronic medical devices should also consult the manufacturer on the use of such devices under the influence of electromagnetic waves. Electromagnetic waves may bring unknown consequences to the use of such medical devices.
- When leaving the vehicle, always carry your key and lock the vehicle. Never leave anyone (especially children) alone in the vehicle.

Mechanical Key

Use the mechanical key (inside the smart key) to lock or unlock the driver's door. When the key is not used, be sure to insert the mechanical key back into the smart key.

- When using the mechanical key in the smart key, slide the lock-up button in the direction of arrow ① and push the back cover of the smart key in the direction of arrow ②, hook the head hole of the mechanical key with the projection parts at both ends of the back cover of smart key and pull it in the direction of arrow ③ to take out the mechanical key, as shown in the figure.

- After using the mechanical key, insert it in the opposite direction as the arrow ③ shows and close the back cover of the smart key.



Bluetooth Digital Key

Mobile Phone Bluetooth Digital Key

The BYD Bluetooth digital key allows you to control the vehicle via a short-range Bluetooth connection between the smartphone and the vehicle, including functions such as starting the vehicle*, unlocking and locking the vehicle doors.

- You can download and install the latest BYD App in the app market. The function of Bluetooth digital key can be found in the app.
- If you are using a vehicle equipped with the Bluetooth digital key function, follow these steps to set up the key near the vehicle:

  1. Open the BYD app.
  2. Switch on the Bluetooth of your phone.
  3. Select the corresponding vehicle.
  4. Tap the "Bluetooth Key Setup" button on the vehicle page to activate the Bluetooth key.

- Turn on the Bluetooth on your phone, approach the vehicle, and open the BYD App for automatic Bluetooth digital key connection. You can also connect it manually. The key is effective after Bluetooth is connected.
- The specific functions supported by the key are subject to the vehicle configuration. The Bluetooth key operates through a Bluetooth connection and sends control commands to the vehicle, without relying on mobile network status.
- When you unbind the vehicle or cancel the cloud service, your Bluetooth key will be deleted.

CAUTION

- Before activating the Bluetooth key, ensure that the vehicle network signal is good. If the activation fails, try to move the vehicle to a place with good network and activate the key again in the application.
- After the vehicle is unlocked with a Bluetooth digital key, the doors will lock automatically if there is no operation in a short time.
- When the key connection or operation fails for many times, you can turn the Bluetooth off and then on, or restart the application.
- Limited by the vehicle environment and mobile phone performance, the effective distance of the key will be reduced in case of dense vehicles.
- The Bluetooth digital key requires your smartphone's Bluetooth and location services to be turned on. If you encounter any issues, please contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- There are a few mobile phones that are not compatible with Bluetooth digital keys.

NFC Digital Key*

- The NFC digital key is a digital key solution provided by BYD. You can register smartphones or wearable devices as vehicle keys to unlock, lock, and start the vehicle.
- Before activating the NFC digital key, ensure that:
  - You have registered BYD Cloud Service for the vehicle.
  - Your vehicle supports NFC digital key.
  - Your smartphone or wearable device supports BYD NFC digital key (consult a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for supported devices).

Activating the NFC digital key on smartphones

When activating the NFC digital key on smartphones, ensure the vehicle is in a safe gear. Follow the instructions bellow to activate:

- Via the BYD app:
  - Download BYD App from the App Store, then register and log in. Navigate to **Digital Key** and follow the instructions to activate the key.

Activating the NFC digital key on wearable devices

Supported wearable devices include Apple Watch (consult a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for other supported devices), and there are two ways of activation:

- Synchronise the key from iPhone to Apple Watch:
  - After successful key activation on iPhone, the device prompts to add the NFC digital key to a paired Apple Watch which is nearby and unlocked. Follow the prompts to complete activation.
- Via the Watch app:
  - If the iPhone NFC key is active but not synced to Apple Watch, open the Watch app on iPhone, select **Wallet**, find the key, and tap **Add** to activate the key following the instructions.

Using the NFC digital key

Ensure the NFC function is enabled on your device before using the NFC digital key. Then follow the instructions below:

- Carry a mobile phone or wearable device with a valid NFC digital key, put its NFC antenna area close to NFC sensor area on the driver's side mirror, and unlock or lock the vehicle. Consult the manufacturers for details of the NFC antenna area.

CAUTION

- After authorizing vehicle start with the NFC digital key, start the vehicle promptly, or you need to place the device at the NFC sign again to reauthorise.

Removing the NFC digital key

You can remove the NFC digital key in any of the two ways:

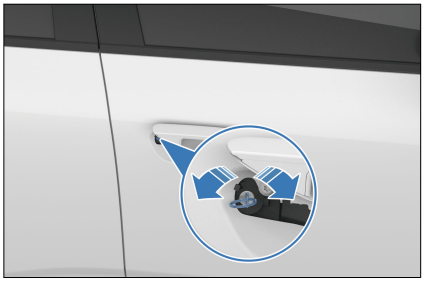
- Via the BYD app:
  - Open the BYD app and navigate to the digital key management screen, select the key to remove, and enter the password to remove it.
- Via the Wallet app:
  - Open the Wallet app on the phone, select the digital key, and remove it following the instructions.

Locking/Unlocking Doors

Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key

Insert the key into the key hole, turn and remove the key, and pull the door handle to open the door.

- Unlock the driver's door: Turn the key clockwise.
- Lock the driver's door: Turn the key counterclockwise.

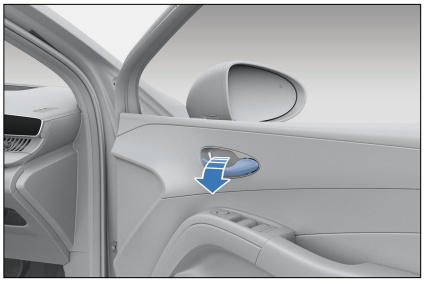


CAUTION

- After removing the mechanical key, pull the driver's door handle to open the door.

Opening with Interior Door Handle

- When the vehicle is unlocked, pull the handle once to open the door from inside the vehicle.



WARNING

- Do not allow children to play with the door handle, so as to avoid the door opening while driving.
- If there are children in the vehicle, make sure to enable the child protection lock function.

CAUTION

- The interior door handle is mechanically linked to the door latch and remains operational even when the vehicle is powered off.
- As this vehicle is equipped with mechanical child protection locks, the rear doors can only be opened with the interior handle when the child protection locks are disabled.

Locking/Unlocking with Smart Key

- The remote control is used to unlock or lock the vehicle at a close distance and perform other features.
- In the active area, press the associated button on the registered smart key to lock or unlock all doors.

Locking:

- When all the doors, the boot, and the bonnet are closed, press the lock button to lock all the doors. Check whether all doors are securely locked.
  - If the vehicle is shut down, the side mirrors fold in (when side mirror auto fold* is enabled on the infotainment system) with turn signals flashing once.



- If the ignition is switched on, the side mirrors will not fold, the turn signals will not flash, and the alarm will sound once.
- If any door, the bonnet or the boot is not closed, the side mirrors do not fold, the turn signals do not flash and the alarm sounds once.

Unlocking:

- Press the unlock button to unlock all doors. The turn signals flash twice.
- When you unlock all the doors with the smart key, even if no door is opened, the interior lights may stay on for 15 seconds and then go out.
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open any door within 30 seconds after unlocking with the smart key. Otherwise, all the doors will lock automatically.

Anti-lockout feature

- If the key is in the vehicle when the doors are closed and locked, the vehicle automatically unlocks and the turn signals will flash twice.

Locating the Vehicle with Smart Key

- With the anti-theft alarm system armed, pressing the lock button sounds a long beep and makes turn signals flash 15 times. Use this feature to locate the vehicle when it cannot be found.
- When the vehicle is in this locating mode, press the lock button again restarts the locating process.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Smart Key

- When the ignition is switched off:
  - Press and hold the lock button on the smart key to raise the four windows.
  - Press and hold the unlock button on the smart key to lower the four windows.
- To enable or disable key window locking and closing/unlocking and opening functions, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** → **Windows** (configurations of the actual vehicle prevail).

WARNING

- When using the remote control function to raise windows, pay attention to the safety of occupants in the vehicle, and use this function only after making sure the windows are clear from pinching anyone.

Locking/Unlocking with Microswitch

Locking

- When the ignition is switched off and all doors are closed but not locked, press the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the smart key. All doors will be locked and turn signals flash once.
- If a door, the bonnet or the boot lid is not closed, pressing the microswitch will still lock the closed doors, but the horn will only sound once, and the turn signals will not flash.



Unlocking

- When doors are locked, press the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the smart key close to the activated area. All doors unlock and turn signals flash twice.
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking. Otherwise, all the doors will relock automatically.
- Pressing the microswitch does not work if:
  - This is performed while a door is being opened or closed.
  - The smart key is left in the vehicle.

REMINDER

- If the smart key is too close to an exterior door handle or window, it may not be possible to activate the entry function.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Microswitch

- With the ignition off, press and hold the microswitch while carrying the smart key to roll up or down all windows (By default, lifting the window function is activated and lowering the window function is disabled).
- To enable or disable microswitch window locking and closing/unlocking and opening functions, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** → **Windows**.

Locking/Unlocking with the NFC Key*

Locking

- When doors are closed but unlocked, hold the effective NFC key close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror. All doors can then be locked at the same time. If the ignition is off, the turn signals flash once.



Unlockings

- When doors are locked, hold the NFC key close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror. Then all doors can be unlocked at the same time. The turn signals flash twice.
- Putting the effective NFC key close to designated area on the driver's side mirror does not work if:
  - The NFC key is placed close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror while a door is being opened or closed.
- To use the NFC digital key on the phone, enable the NFC function of the phone and hold the top back part of the phone close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror.

CAUTION

- The NFC digital key may not work on some phones when they are turned off.
- Avoid using the NFC digital key of your phone for extended periods or frequently when it is out of battery or turned off.

REMINDER

- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking with the NFC key, or all doors will relock automatically.
- Unlocking with the NFC key allows starting the vehicle without a key in a stipulated period, while this will be disabled after a valid locking operation.

Unlocking the Boot

Unlocking the boot with the smart key

- Double-press the boot release button on the smart key. The turn signals then flash twice.



Unlocking the boot with microswitch

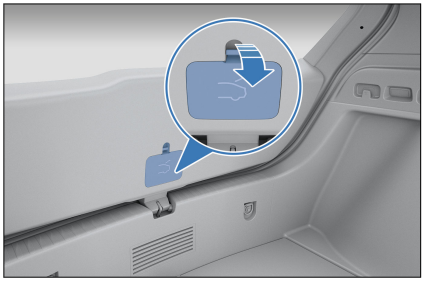
- With the ignition off and the anti-theft alarm system armed, approach and press the rear microswitch while carrying a valid key to unlock the boot.
- When the anti-theft alarm system is disarmed, press the rear microswitch to open the boot.

WARNING

- In order to prevent serious injury, make sure to observe the following precautions:
  - Make sure to alert people nearby of the lid motion.
  - Make sure fingers or other objects are clear from the lid area when it is closing.
  - Make sure the surrounding area is safe when opening or closing the boot.
  - Make sure the boot is properly closed when the vehicle is in motion.
  - Be mindful of windy conditions when opening or closing the boot.
  - The lid may start closing before fully opening. Opening or closing the boot on slopes is more difficult than on level ground. Be mindful of the possibility of the lid to move on its own in such conditions. Before loading or unloading the boot, make sure the lid is fully open and secure.

Emergency Boot Releasing from the Inside

There is an emergency unlocking cover just above the boot lock. Open the cover and pull the emergency unlocking rope or lever to open the boot in an emergency.



REMINDER

- When the vehicle is powered off, the boot lid can be unlocked from the inside in case of emergency.

Locking/Unlocking with Central Locking

Locking or unlocking the vehicle with the central locking

See ***P78*** in "Driver's Door Switches" in this chapter.

Automatic locking or unlocking

- All doors automatically lock at 5 mph (8 km/h) or above.
- Press the START/STOP button to switch the ignition off. All doors unlock automatically.

Locking/Unlocking all doors concurrently

- When the vehicle is not in anti-theft mode, the backlight of the central locking button turns on if the vehicle is locked and turns off if the vehicle is unlocked.
- Pressing the central lock button locks all doors so that any attempt to open any door from the outside fails. At this time, deactivate the anti-theft alarm system and the double lock to open it (for details, refer to ***P31***).

REMINDER

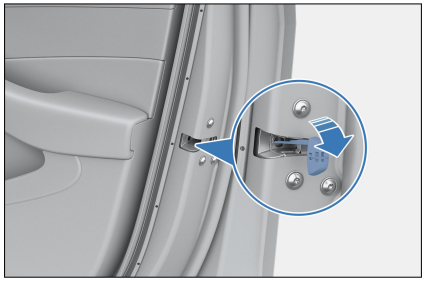
- All doors unlock automatically when the vehicle suffers a strong impact, depending on the impact intensity and accident type.

Emergency Vehicle Locking with the Mechanical Key

When the central locking system or the smart key fails, use the mechanical key for emergency locking or unlocking.

Locking

1. Take out the mechanical key from the key fob.
2. Open all doors other than the driver's door and move down the slider with the mechanical key as shown. You can then lock the door by closing it.



3. After locking the three doors, open the driver's door.
4. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it counterclockwise as far as it can go, return it to the initial position and pull it out. (See ***P56*** in this Chapter.)

Unlocking

1. Take out the mechanical key from the key fob.
2. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it clockwise as far as it

can go, return it to the initial position, and pull it out.

3. If inside the vehicle, the anti-theft alarm system must be deactivated and the double lock unlocked (for details, refer to ***P31***).

REMINDER

- Prevent excessive force from distorting or breaking the key during the operation.

Smart Access and Start System

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors and start the vehicle.

Access

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors (see ***P56*** and ***P57***).

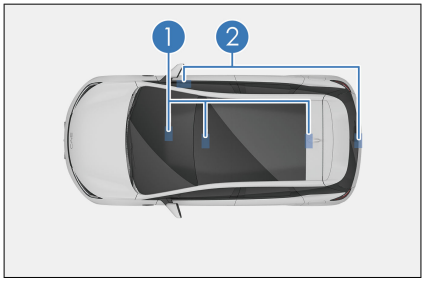
Start-up

With the smart key inside, press the brake pedal and the START/STOP button to start the vehicle (see ***P114***).

Antenna positions

① Interior antenna

② Exterior antenna



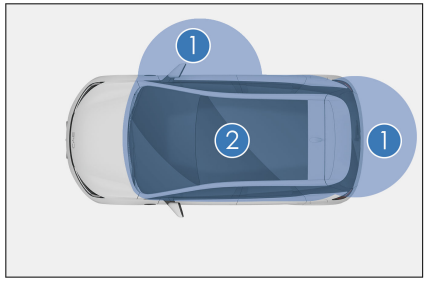
Active Area

The smart access and start functions take effect only when the registered smart key is within the active area.

① Active area of the access function: about one meter from the front door handle and the exterior boot switch.

② Active area of the start function: inside the cabin.

If another smart key is near this vehicle's smart key, unlocking may take longer than usual, which is normal.



If another smart key is near this vehicle's smart key, unlocking may take longer than usual, which is normal.

REMINDER

In the following situation, smart access and start system may not work normally:

- There is a strong electromagnetic field nearby, such as TV towers, power stations, and broadcasting stations.
- The smart key is being carried along with a communication device, such as a two-way radio or mobile phone.
- The smart key is in contact with or covered by a metal object.
- The door handle is operated too quickly.

REMINDER

- The smart key is too close to the handle.
- Another wireless remote control function is being used nearby.
- When the smart key battery runs out.
- The smart key is close to high-voltage equipment or equipment that produces noise.
- The smart key is being carried along with another smart key or radio-wave-emitting device.
- Even within the active area, the smart key may not work properly if it is put in certain locations, for example, on the dashboard, in the glove box, or on the floor.

- If the smart access system is not working properly and it is impossible to enter the vehicle, the mechanical key can be used to lock/unlock the driver's door, or the wireless remote control function can be used to lock/unlock all doors.
- Pressing the START/STOP button may not enable the start function due to:
  - If the smart key does not work and the smart key system warning light flashes on the instrument cluster, along with the low key battery message, the key battery may be dead.
  - The vehicle has been started repeatedly in a short time. Wait for 10 seconds before starting the vehicle again.
- If the smart access and start system cannot work properly due to system failures, bring all smart keys to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for repair.

Saving battery power

- The smart key communicates with the vehicle even when the vehicle is not running. Therefore, do not leave the smart key in the vehicle or within 2 meters from the vehicle.
- Receiving strong electromagnetic waves for a long time drains the battery of the smart key quickly. The smart key must be kept at least one meter away from electrical equipment that generates a magnetic field, such as the following devices:
  - Television
  - Personal computer
  - Phone charger
  - Electroliers
  - Fluorescent desk lamps

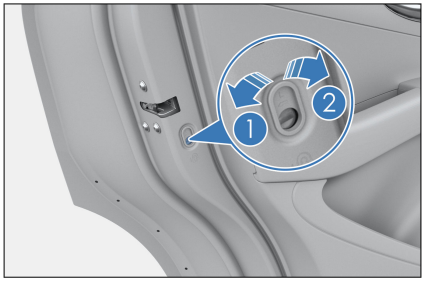
Child Protection Lock

- Child protection locks are designed to prevent children sitting in the rear seats from inadvertently opening the rear doors. Such locks are provided on both sides of the rear doors.
- The child safety lock is a rotary type. Insert the mechanical key into the key slot and lock or unlock it in the direction indicated by the arrow. The lock and unlock directions are opposite for the left and right rear doors.

Lock/unlock direction for the left rear door:

① Locking

② Unlocking

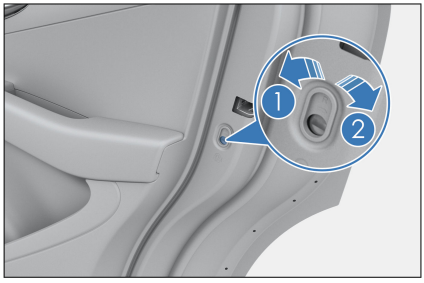


Lock/unlock direction for the right rear door:

① Unlocking

② Locking

The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the latch is locked. Use the exterior door handle to open this door.



WARNING

- Before driving, especially when a child is in the vehicle, ensure that the doors are closed and the child protection lock function is enabled.
- Proper use of seat belts and activation of child protection lock helps prevent the driver and passengers from being thrown out of the vehicle in an accident, and also prevents the doors from being opened accidentally.

Seats

Seat Precautions

- Adjust the driver's seat so that the pedals, steering wheel, and dashboard controls are within the driver's easy control.
- The most effective safeguard while driving is to always rest well on the upright seatback, with seat belt in the right position.
- Do not fold or unfold the rear seats when the vehicle is in motion.
- Secure your luggage appropriately to prevent it from skidding or moving. Luggage in the vehicle should not be higher than seatbacks.
- The head support can only protect your head when it is in the proper position. Remember to adjust it to the proper position if it has been moved.

WARNING

- Sitting on a folded seatback, in the boot, or on the cargo is prohibited. Improper seating position or improperly fastened seat belts can result in personal injuries in case of emergency braking or a collision.
- Do not place any items under the seats. The driver may lose control of the vehicle because items placed there affect the seat locking mechanism, causing the seat to move suddenly.
- When adjusting the seat, ensure sufficient space around the seat and in the rear seating area for children, passengers, or pets. Be careful not to squeeze or hit

WARNING

children, occupants, or pets in the rear seat area.

- When adjusting a seat, ensure sufficient space between your feet and those of surrounding passengers to avoid injury.
- When adjusting the seat, do not place your hand under the seat or near its operating parts, to prevent being crushed.
- After adjusting the seatback, lean back to confirm the seatback has been locked. Seatbacks that are not fully locked can cause personal injuries in an accident or emergency braking.
- Do not put the seatback down while driving or riding in the vehicle. This makes the shoulder strap of the seat belt not properly attached to the body. As a result, occupants could hit the strap in an accident, causing serious injuries to the neck or other parts; or they may slip out of the waist belt, resulting in other serious injuries.
- Do not adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is in motion, as unpredictable seat movement can cause the loss of vehicle control at this time.
- Do not drive the vehicle until occupants are seated properly.
- Do not allow children to adjust the seat without adult supervision to avoid any injury.

CAUTION

- Adjust the seat position before fastening the seat belt.

CAUTION

- Be careful not to damage the seat belts when folding seats.
- As seat area is not waterproof, a large amount of liquid can easily cause the controller to short-circuit and burn out.

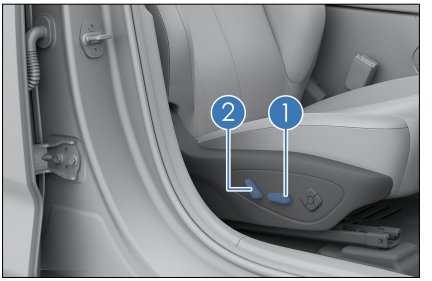
Adjusting Front Seats

Adjusting front seats with power*

Power front seat adjustments allow you to adjust seatback recline, seat height, and seatback angle. Refer to the following according to the actual configuration of your vehicle.

① Seat position adjustment switch

- Move the seat position adjustment switch back or forth to slide the seat backward or forward.
- Move the rear of the switch up or down to adjust seat height.



② Seatback angle adjustment switch

- Tilt the upper part of the switch backward or forward to recline seatback.

CAUTION

- Releasing the switch stops the seat. Do not place anything under

CAUTION

the seat as this may clog seat movement.

- To avoid contact with the roof or sun visor, do not move the front seats too far forward.

Adjusting Front Seats Manually*

Manual front seat adjustment includes seat position adjustment, seat height adjustment, and seatback angle adjustment. Refer to the following according to the actual configuration of your vehicle.

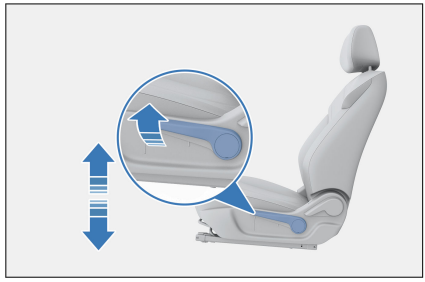
Adjusting the fore-aft position

- Hold the middle of the adjustment lever to pull it up, slide the seat forward or backward to the desired position, and release.
- After the adjustment, try to slide the seat back and forth and wait for a locking sound to confirm that the seat is securely locked into place.



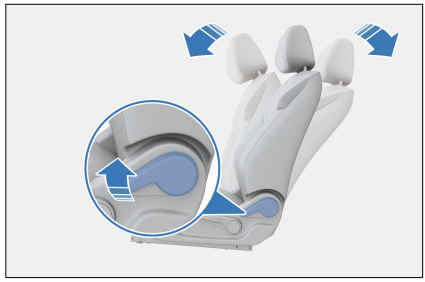
Adjusting the seat height*

- Pull up the height adjustment handle to adjust the seat to a comfortable height as needed.
- Pulling up means raising and pressing down means lowering.



Seatback adjustment handle

- Pull up the adjustment handle, and lean back or forward to adjust the seatback recline. Release when you have found the desired position.



Seat Heating*

- Enable or disable seat heating via the shortcut menu by swiping down from the top status bar of the infotainment touchscreen or via the infotainment touchscreen → .

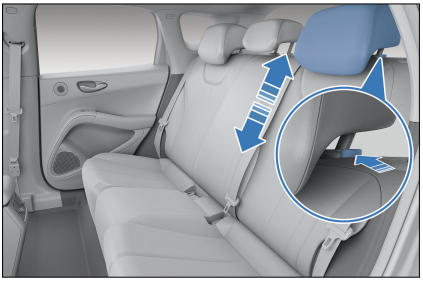
Heating adjustment

- Seat heating: On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the seat heating icon to control the heating level.

Folding Rear Seats

- Pull the handle on the seatback to fold the bench.





REMINDER

- Fold or unfold the rear seats at a moderate speed. Avoid quickly lowering or pulling up seatbacks to prevent damage to or malfunction of rear seats and the seat belts.
- When unfolding a rear seat, do not push the seatback hard; otherwise, the seatback will be pre-stressed and impossible to unlock.
- When unfolding a seatback, check that the buckle position is proper to expose the reserved opening on the seat.
- Do not turn over the seat when the seat belt latch is inserted into the buckle.

Head Supports

- Lifting a head support

  Lift the head support to a proper position, and release it after hearing a locking sound.
- Lowering a head support

  Press and hold the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, and then release the button after hearing a locking sound.
- Removing a head support

  Press and hold the head support adjustment button, remove the head support, and release the button.
- Installing a head support

  Insert the head support post into the bushing with the grooves facing forward. Press and hold the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, slightly lift the head support and release the button after hearing a locking sound.

WARNING

- Head supports can help prevent neck injuries and other head injuries. Adjust the head support so that its centre aligns with the back of your head for maximum protection. Adjust the head support to the proper position based on your actual height.
- Align the occupant's ear tip line with the centre of the head support.
- After the adjustment, press down the head support to make sure that it is locked.
- Do not drive a vehicle without head supports. Failing to install or improperly installing head

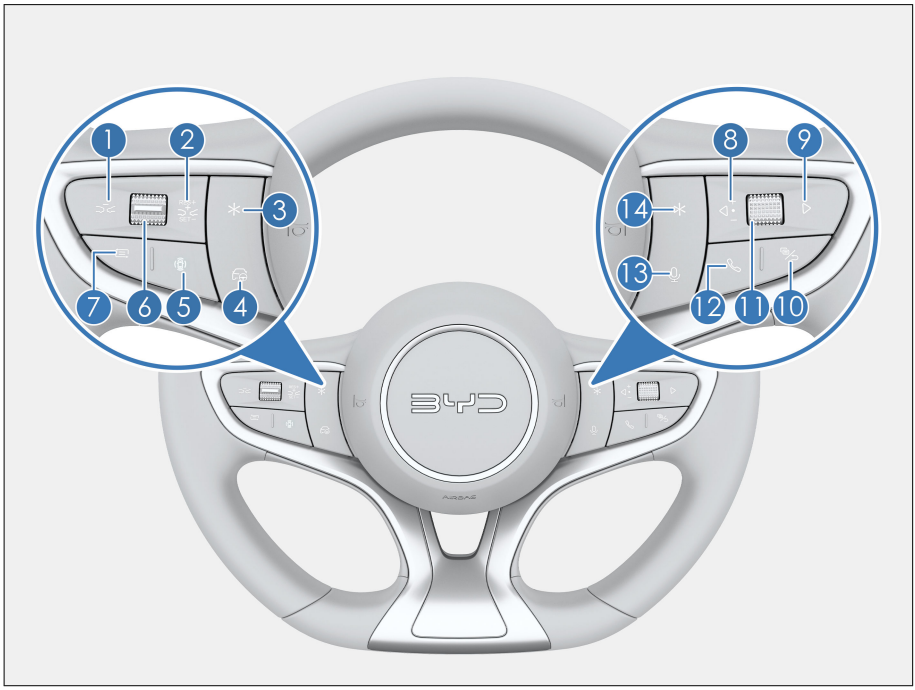
WARNING

supports may result in serious injuries to occupants during emergency braking or in the event of a collision.

- Do not attach any objects to the head support levers.

Steering Wheel

Steering Wheel Switches



1	Distance -	8	Left
2	Distance +	9	Right
3	Custom	10	Instrument cluster/Back
4	Adaptive cruise control	11	Scroll button
5	Around view monitor	12	Call
6	Reset/+ or Set/- rocker switch	13	Speech recognition
7	Driving information	14	Custom

Left-hand buttons

Rocker switch

- Reset/+: Restores the speed stored before exiting from the cruise system last time.
- Setup -: Sets to cruise at the current speed.

Distance +

- Increases the distance by one level when the ACC function is enabled. A total of four levels are available.

Distance -

- Reduces the distance from the vehicle ahead by one level when the ACC function is enabled. A total of four levels are available.

Adaptive cruise control

- Press this button to enable or disable the adaptive cruise control (ACC) system.

Around view monitor*

- Enables or disables AVM.

Driving information

- Press this button to switch the driving information interface. Press and hold to clear the relevant driving information.

Right-hand buttons

Scroll button

- Adjusting infotainment system volume when the instrument cluster is not in menu mode:
  - Roll the button upward to increase the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the highest.
  - Roll the button downward to decrease the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the lowest.
  - Roll the button downward to mute.
- When the instrument cluster is in menu mode:
  - Roll the button upward to select the upper level-2 or level-3 menu items.
  - Roll the button downward to select the lower level-2 or level-3 menu items.
  - Roll the button downward to go to the next-level menu or confirm the current setting.

CAUTION

- The infotainment system is muted once the instrument cluster is set to the menu mode. To adjust infotainment system volume, exit the instrument cluster menu mode first.

Left/Right button

- When the infotainment system is in radio mode:
  - Press the ◁ to select the previous radio station.
  - Press the ▷ to select the next radio station.
- In USB/Bluetooth music/third-party music app/other modes:
  - Press ◁ to play the previous track (track number -1).
  - Press ◁ to select a record upward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.
  - Press ▷ to play the next track (track number +1).
  - Press ▷ to select a record downward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.
- In the menu mode:

- Press ◁ to switch to the previous menu and its submenus on the left.
- Press the ▷ to switch to the level-1 menu and its submenus on the right.

Instrument cluster/Back

- When the instrument cluster is not in the menu mode, press Instrument cluster/Back to show the instrument cluster menu.
- When the instrument cluster is in menu mode, press this button to return to the upper-level screen, or to exit the menu if there is no upper-level screen.
- During a Bluetooth call, press this button to end the call.

Call

- Press this button to make or receive a call (the audio system is muted at the same time).
- When a Bluetooth-unrelated screen is currently displayed, press this button to switch to the phone selection screen if Bluetooth is disconnected, or to the Dial screen if Bluetooth is connected.
- After entering a phone number on the Dial screen or selecting a record on the Call Log or Contacts screen, press this button to dial the number.
- When Bluetooth is connected, but no phone number is entered on the Dial screen, press this button to switch to the call log screen. Press this button again to call the first dialled number on the call history.

Speech recognition

- Press this button to activate speech recognition on the infotainment touchscreen, with which you can record voice commands.
- Press a second time to exit speech recognition.

Horn

- Press the horn area to honk the horn, and release to stop honking.

CAUTION

- Avoid prolonged honking to prevent damage to the horn.

REMINDER

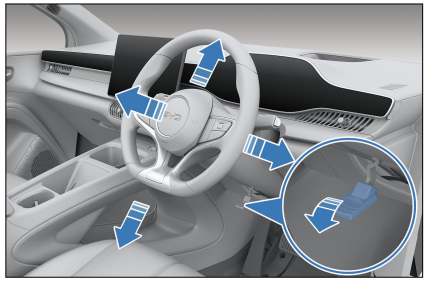
- Observe the traffic laws and use the horn properly.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually

To adjust the steering wheel position, hold it and operate as follows:

- Press the steering wheel adjustment handle, move the steering wheel to the desired angle, or adjust it to the desired axial position, and restore the handle to the locked position.



WARNING

- Never adjust the steering wheel while driving, otherwise you will be under risk of impaired vehicle control.

WARNING

- After adjusting the steering wheel, move it up and down to verify that it is securely locked.

Steering Assist Mode Settings

- The level of steering assistance can be adjusted to individual preferences.
- You can set Comfort or Sport pedal feel on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **Drive** → **Driving Control**.

REMINDER

- Setting the power steering to sport mode is suggested if the steering wheel feels light when the vehicle is running at a high speed.

Steering Wheel Heating*

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → the steering wheel heating icon.

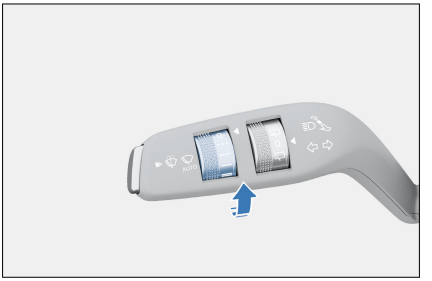
Wipers

Wiper Switch

Windscreen Wipers and Washer

Front wipers

- The lever is used to control the windscreen wipers and washer among the following five modes:
  - 0 : OFF
  - : Auto/Intermittent wipers level 1
  - : Auto/Intermittent wipers level 2
  - : Continuous, slow
  - : Continuous, fast
- Toggle down or up the rocker switch on the rear side of the lever to select a mode.



- You can enable **Auto Wiper** on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **Drive** → **Comfort Driving**. Once enabled, the wipers will swipe once and then switch to the auto wiper mode, adjusting the speed according to the amount of rainfall.
- In auto mode, toggle down or up the rocker switch on the rear side of the lever to select a mode.

WARNING

- If the ignition is on, and the wipers are set to auto mode, touching or wiping the glass on the sensor area may activate the wipers and cause an accident.

CAUTION

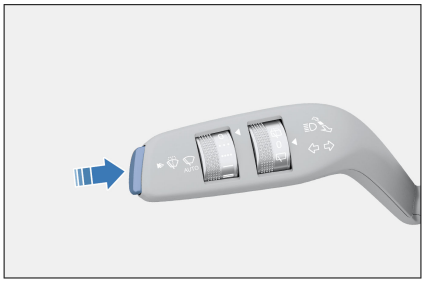
- Turn off the auto wipers vehicle washes, in dry weather, or on rain-free days, to prevent inadvertent wiper operation.
- If snow or other debris causes the wipers to stop mid-operation, turn

CAUTION

off the wipers and park the vehicle in a safe location. Then clear the snow or debris to allow the wipers to function correctly.

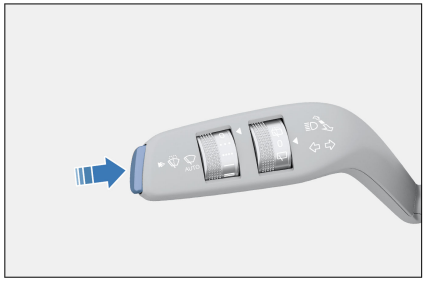
- It is possible for the rain-sensing wiper to not react to snow because snowflakes have various shapes and therefore sometimes cannot be correctly detected. After the snow melt, the wiper may work automatically.

- To operate the wipers in point-wiping mode, press the button at the end of the paddle to the first position. The wipers swipe at a low speed until the button is released.



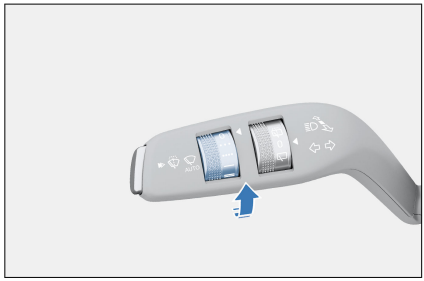
Windscreen washer

- To clean the windscreen, press the button at the end of the control lever to the second position. The washer spray continuously, and the wipers will start working afterward.
- If the control lever is released, or if the operation lasts longer than 10 seconds, the washer stops spraying, and the wipers will complete four wiping cycles before stopping.



Rear wiper

- Set the rear wiper switch to to enable the intermittent rear wiper function.
- Set the rear wiper switch to or open the boot to stop the rear wiper.
- Set the rear wiper switch to and hold it to activate the rear window wiper and washer simultaneously.



- Set the rear wiper switch to and release it. The wiper will operate once or twice after washing fluid has been sprayed.

CAUTION

- Clean the wipers regularly.
- If conditions permit, avoid using the wipers immediately when it starts raining, because the mixture of rainwater and dust will not clean the windscreen effectively

CAUTION

and may instead instantly blur your view, posing a risk to safety.

- If snow or other debris causes the wipers to stop mid-operation, turn off the wipers and park the vehicle in a safe location. Then clear the snow or debris to allow the wipers to function correctly.
- Use cleaning agent specially for glass. Plain water or other types of detergent may damage the washer motor.
- Do not operate the washer consecutively for over 10 seconds, or when the washer fluid tank is empty, or the motor may overheat or be damaged.

Replacing Wiper Blades

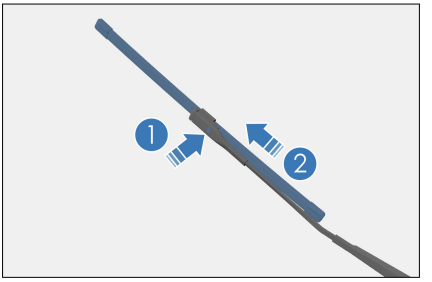
Inspect wiper blades for cracks or partial hardening at least every six months. If they are noted, replace wiper blades. Otherwise, the windscreen will streak or will be left unclean after wiping.

Replacing Wiper Blades

When the vehicle is powered on, enable or disable the front wiper check on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **Drive** → **Overhaul**. When the corresponding wiper check function is enabled, the wipers rotate out automatically for easy maintenance and replacement.

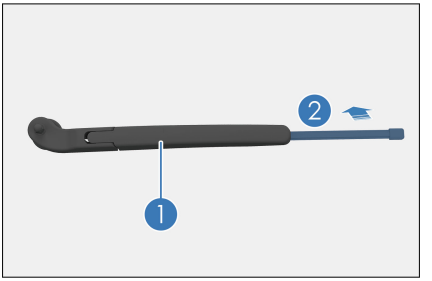
Replacing front wipers

1. Pull up the wiper arm at the driver side, and then pull up the other at the passenger side.
2. Press the wiper lock button ①.
3. Hold the tab and slide the blade down the arm as indicated by ②.
4. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.



Replacing the rear wiper

1. Pull up the wiper arm.
2. Hold the wiper in position ①, and pull the blade out along direction ②.
3. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.



CAUTION

- Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are pulled up, as this may damage the bonnet and wiper arms.
- Avoid direct impact onto the windscreen when lowering wiper blades.
- Do not bend the wiper blade, and do not obstruct the wiper blade when the wiper is in operation.

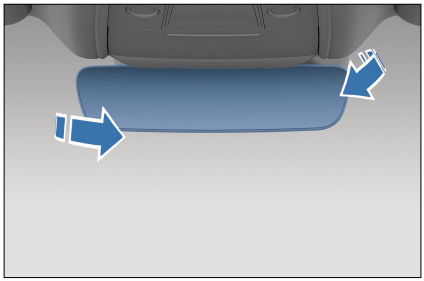
CAUTION

- When replacing the wiper blade, after raising the wiper arm, hold it steady and gently lower it after replacing the wiper blade. Otherwise, before the wiper blade is installed, any external force could make the wiper arm snap back on the glass and risk breaking it.

Mirrors

Interior Rearview Mirror

- Move the rearview mirror up, down, left, or right to a suitable position.
- The interior rearview mirror is equipped with electronic anti-glare function*, which automatically adjusts the colour of the mirror according to the surroundings to reduce the interference of rear glare on the driver's field of view.



WARNING

- Do not hang heavy objects from the interior rearview mirror, or shake or drag it with force.
- To avoid the mirror falling off, do not adjust the mirror forcibly if it is stuck.

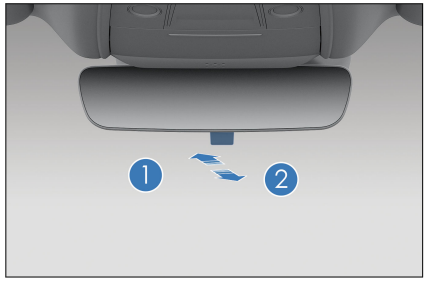
WARNING

- Adjust the rearview mirror before driving. Do not adjust the rearview mirrors while driving. This may distract your attention and cause accidents.

Manual Anti-glare Interior Rearview Mirror*

The mirror has two working modes: normal and anti-glare.

- Normal mode: turn the lever to position ① to have the clearest rear view from the mirror.
- Anti-glare mode: turn the lever to position ②, which reduces interference from headlights of rear vehicles at night. Be aware that this glare reduction also compromises the clarity of the rear view.



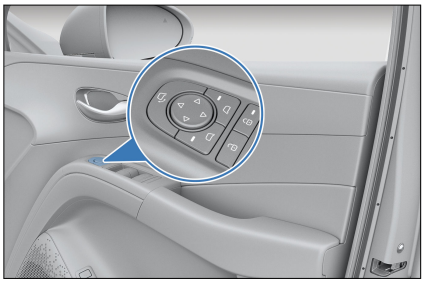
Side Mirrors

Adjusting Side Mirrors

Use the associated switches to adjust the side mirrors to see the sides of the vehicle.

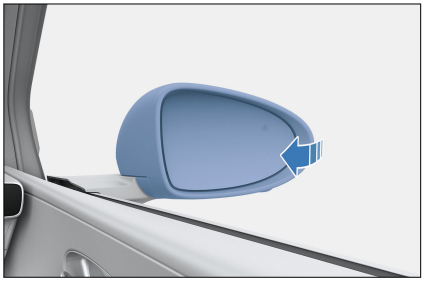
- Selection switches: selects the side mirror to be adjusted.
  - : Left side mirror button
  - : Right side mirror button

- Side mirror adjustment buttons : Press this button to adjust the side mirror lens to an appropriate position.



Folding Side Mirrors

- **Folding side mirrors manually***
  - Push the outer edge of a side mirror to rotate it around the folding axis to the locked position.



- **Folding side mirrors with power***
  - Fold switch : folds or unfolds both side mirrors.
  - Both side mirrors fold automatically when the anti-theft alarm system is armed, and extend automatically when the system is disarmed.
  - To enable or disable side mirror auto fold, go to the infotainment touchscreen → → **Drive** → **Comfort Driving**.

WARNING

- Adjust the side mirrors before driving. Adjustment while driving poses distraction, increasing the chance of an accident.

REMINDER

- Do not operate the controller or scrape the surfaces of frozen side mirrors. Use de-icer spray to remove the ice.

Side Mirror Defroster*

Tap this button on the A/C operation interface to activate the function, and the heating panel in side mirrors will quickly clear the side mirrors.

REMINDER

- Using the side mirror electric heating defrosting function for a long time may cause the mirror to wear out faster. Turn off the defrost button when it is not needed.

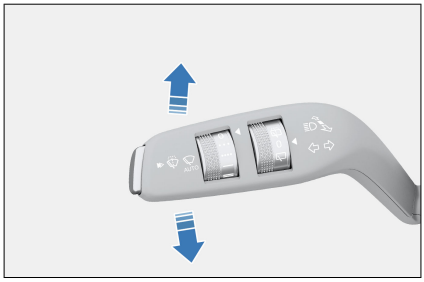
Switches

Light Switches

- Auto lights, position lights, dipped beam lights, rear fog lights, and daytime running lights can be controlled on the infotainment system.
- To turn on or off any of these lights or turn off all of them, go to the infotainment touchscreen → → **Light**→ **Exterior**.

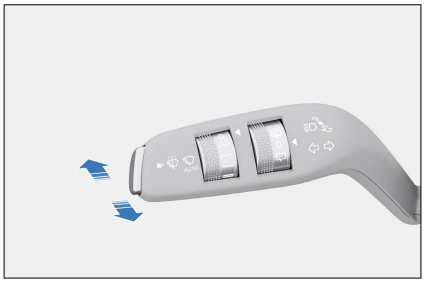
Turn signals

- Push up the switch lever to activate the right turn signal and down to activate the left turn signal.



High beam

- When the auto light or dipped beam function is activated in the infotainment system, push the lever to turn on or off the high beams.
  - Push the lever forward (away from the steering wheel) to turn on the high beams and then they are solid on.
  - Pull the lever back (close to the steering wheel) and the high beam flashes. Release the lever for the light switch to automatically reset and the high beams turn off.



REMINDER

- The light intensity sensor is located at the top of the windscreen. Do not block the sensor or let anything splash on it.

Auto light off

- Activation conditions: to activate this function, set the switch to "Position Lamp" or "Dipped Beam" and switch off the vehicle power.
- When the auto light off function is activated, the headlights, position lights, rear fog lights, and high beams turn off in 10 seconds if the driver's door is closed.
- When the auto light off function is activated, the headlights, position lights, rear fog lights, and high beams turn off in 5 minutes if the driver's door is open.
- After the lights turn off automatically, if the light status changes, these lights come on in the new status. If the conditions to activate the auto light off function are still met, the function is activated again.
- Disabling the auto light off function: When the vehicle is powered on, the auto light off function is disabled, and the light switch can be operated normally.
- If the auto light off function has turned off the lights and the anti-theft alarm system has been armed, disarming the alarm system makes the lights come on again automatically. If the driver's door remains closed, the lights go off again after 10 seconds. But if any door is open, it turns off the lights in 5 minutes.

Headlights after exit and headlights before enter

- Off delay:
  - Set the time for "Headlights after Exit" on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Courtesy Light** (default: 10 seconds). With the lights set to "AUTO", "Position Lamp" or "Dipped Beam",

when you power off the vehicle, lock four doors and attempt to leave the vehicle, the corresponding lights will continue to light up for 10 seconds (or the set time) to provide coming-home lighting.

- Entry lighting:
  - Set the time for "Headlights before Enter" on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Courtesy Light** (default: 10 seconds). With the light adjustment switch turned to "Auto", "Position Lamp" or "Dipped Beam", when you unlock the vehicle and attempt to approach it, the corresponding lights will light up for 10 seconds (or the set time) to provide the leaving-home lighting.

Adjusting headlight height

- Go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Exterior** → **Headlight Height**.

Adaptive Front Light (AFL)

- Adaptive front light (AFL) is a driver assistance feature that helps the driver use the high beam appropriately in dark environments. In dark conditions, the system switches from dipped beam to high beam to maximise visibility. When an oncoming vehicle is detected, the system automatically switches from high beam to dipped beam to prevent dazzling other drivers. It also switches to dipped beam in urban areas or under other conditions.

Settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **Light** → **Exterior**.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- AFL indicators:

AFL standby	AFL activated	AFL fault
		

AFL on/off conditions

- Auto activation conditions:
  - The light switch is in the AUTO position.
  - The vehicle speed is between 22-86 mph (35-140 km/h).
  - The area ahead is dark.
- Auto off conditions:
  - During daylight or nighttime, the system suppresses the high beam when ambient lighting is sufficient.
  - At night, the system suppresses the high beam when other road users are detected within a certain range ahead.
  - At night, turning on turn signal suppresses the high beam. After the turn signal is turned off, the high beam is activated again if conditions are met.

WARNING

AFL may be falsely triggered or fail to operate due to various environmental factors and conditions. Typical scenarios include, but are not limited to:

- The vehicle is operating in severe weather conditions, such as fog, rain, or snow.

WARNING

- There are traffic participants with poor lighting (such as pedestrians and bicycles), railways or waterways nearby, or wild animals on the roads.
- There are strongly reflective objects, such as highway traffic signs and water reflections on the road.
- The windscreen that is fogged, dirty, or blocked by stickers or decorations.

CAUTION

- AFL serves as an auxiliary light control and cannot replace the driver's judgement. You must observe road regulations and switch between high and dipped beams based on changing road conditions.
- If the vehicle has been involved in a collision or the sensor has been reassembled, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for sensor calibration to avoid affecting system performance.

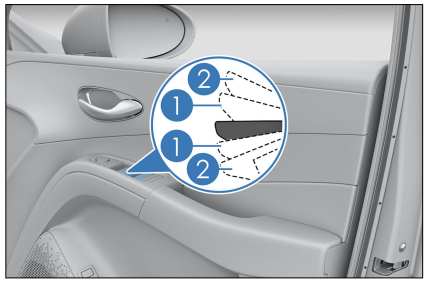
REMINDER

- System malfunctions or lighting system failures can affect AFL functionality.
- Activating the high beam manually suppresses the AFL feature.

Driver's Door Switches

Power Window Switches

- When the vehicle is in "ON"/"OK", all window switches can roll up or down the window.
  - Press the window switch to roll the window down.
  - Pull up the window switch to roll the window up.



Manual operation

- Press or pull a window switch to position ① and hold to lower or raise the associated window. Release the switch to stop the window where you want it.

Automatic up/down

- Press or pull a window switch to position ② and release to automatically lower or raise the associated window. During the process, operate the switch in any direction to stop the window midway.

Anti-pinch windows*

- If someone or an object is caught by the window when it is rolling up, the window stops and rolls down automatically.

Anti-pinch initialisation

- Pull the switch to close the window, then release immediately. Repeat the

first step and hold the switch for at least 400 ms.

WARNING

- Never try to deliberately activate the anti-pinch function.
- Follow the precautions below to prevent serious injuries or death from window closing:
  - Before operating the power windows, ensure that all passengers do not have any body parts that can be caught in the window.
  - Do not allow a child to operate the power windows.

CAUTION

- Excessively frequent activation of the anti-pinch function can activate the regulator motor's overheat protection.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is jammed into the window when it is almost completely closed.
- If the low-voltage battery is disconnected while a window is being rolled up or down, both the automatic rolling-up and anti-pinch functions cease to work.
- Contacting a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for maintenance is recommended if the windows' automatic closing function or anti-pinch function is not working normally.

Delay function*

- After the vehicle is powered off, if the front doors are not open, the four-door window controller has a roll-up/down delay period of 10 minutes. During this period, the windows can still be rolled up and down. If either of the front doors is opened during this period, the delay is cancelled, and the switches can no longer be used to operate the windows.

WARNING

- Before closing a power window, ensure occupants' hands are not placed upon the window glass; pinching of hands or fingers can result in serious injuries.

Window Lock Button

- Pressing this button deactivates the window switches on the rear row. The window switches on the sides of the driver and the front passenger remain operational.
- Press the switch a second time. The indicator goes out, and the window switches on the rear row work normally.



Central Locking

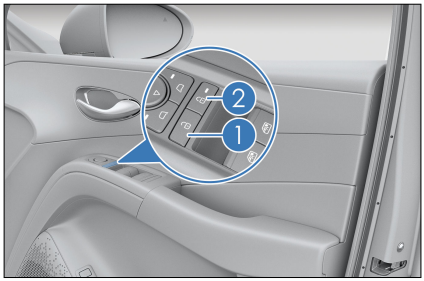
The driver's door is equipped with power door lock switches. Use them to lock or unlock all doors.

① **Unlocking**

Press this button to unlock the four doors. The red lock indicator turns off now.

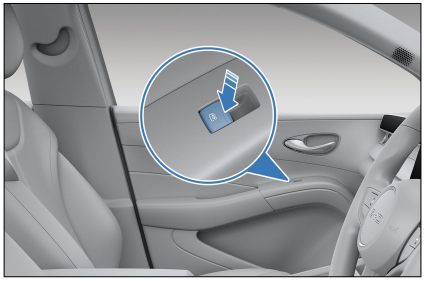
② **Locking**

Press this button to lock the four doors. The red lock indicator lights up now.



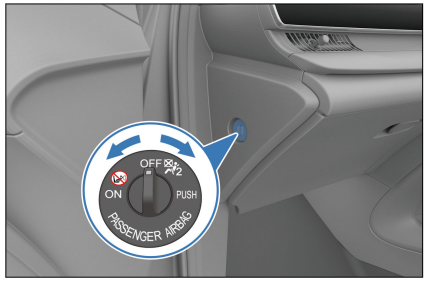
Window Control Switch on Passenger's Side

When the ignition is on, use the front right and rear door window switches to operate the respective windows.



Front Passenger Airbag Switch

- The front passenger airbag can be activated or deactivated with a front passenger airbag switch.
- The switch is located on the passenger's side of the dashboard and is accessible when the passenger's door is open.



- The front passenger airbag indicator is located on the ceiling.
- Check that the switch is in the required position.
- Enable or disable the front passenger airbag according to the use of the front passenger seat:
  - When the switch is ON, the front passenger airbag is activated. The front passenger airbag indicator "PASSENGER AIRBAG" is solid on, "ON" and  come on, and "OFF" and  are off. The front passenger airbag deploys in the event of a moderate to severe collision that meets the necessary deployment conditions.
  - When the switch is OFF, the front passenger airbag is deactivated. The passenger airbag indicator "PASSENGER AIRBAG" is solid on, "ON" and  are off, and "OFF" and  come on. The front passenger airbag do not deploys in the event of a moderate to severe collision that meets the necessary deployment conditions.

WARNING

- Never use a rear-facing child restraint on the front passenger

WARNING

seat with an activated passenger airbag. Failure to do so can result in serious personal injuries or death.

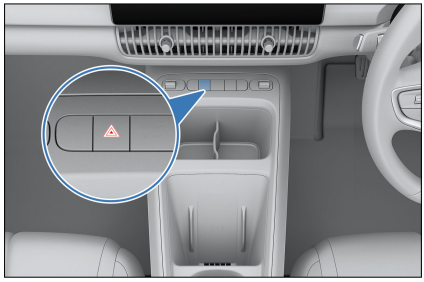
- When the front passenger seat is occupied with an adult, the passenger airbag switch must be turned to "ON" to always keep the front passenger airbag active.
- If the front passenger airbag remains active when the front passenger airbag switch is off, immediately contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- To prevent damage to the airbag system, operate the front passenger airbag switch when the vehicle is on "OFF".
- It is the driver's responsibility to confirm that the front passenger airbag switch is in the correct position for the person sitting in the front passenger seat.

Hazard Warning Light Switch

When the ⚠ is pressed, all turn signals and turn signal indicators on the instrument cluster start flashing. They all stop flashing when the ⚠ is pressed again.



CAUTION

- The hazard warning lights are used to alert drivers and pedestrians of possible risks of dangerous accidents.

Emergency Call (E-Call)

① SOS

② E-Call status indicator



- E-Call refers to emergency call. Pressing and holding the SOS button for 2–10 seconds triggers the E-Call system, and pressing and holding the button for 10–20 seconds does not.
- To cancel an emergency call made by mistake, press the SOS button a second time within five seconds.
- The E-Call system activates automatically in the event of airbag deployment.

- When triggered, the system automatically makes an emergency call and communicates the related vehicle and accident information to a public safety answering point.

CAUTION

- If pressed and held for over 20 seconds, the SOS button will be considered to be short-circuited (stuck). In that case, E-Call cannot be triggered.

CAUTION

- The dialled emergency call cannot be cancelled manually. The E-Call system will begin 60-minute callback time after the call is hung up by the public safety answering point or is not answered when it has been dialled 10 consecutive times.

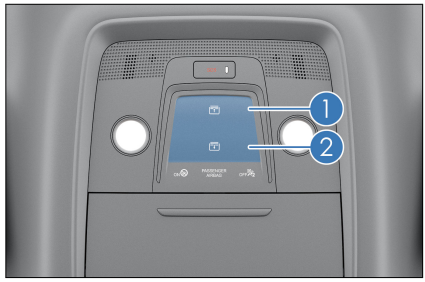
Status	LED Indicator	Beeping
Ignition off or E-Call system failure	Off	\
Power-on self-check mode	Flashing fast (at 2 Hz)	\
Ignition on and self-check passed	Solid on if self-check is passed	\
E-Call connecting	Flashing–1 Hz	A beep
E-Call connected	Flashing–1 Hz	A beep
E-Call ended	Solid on	Two beeps after E-Call ends
Callback time (60 minutes by default)	Slow flashing–0.2 Hz	\

Sunshade Switch*

Opening/Closing the Sunshade*

Opening the sunshade

- Press and hold the sunshade open button ① to open the sunshade manually. Release the button midway to stop the sunshade.
- Release the sunshade open button ① immediately after touching it. The sunshade opens automatically. For the sunshade to stop at its current position, touch the ① or ② button midway.



Closing the sunshade

- Press and hold the sunshade close button ② to close the sunshade manually. Release the button midway to stop the sunshade at its current position.

- If the sunshade has been initialised, briefly touching button ② closes the sunshade automatically. For the sunshade to stop midway, touch button ① or ②.

CAUTION

- When opening or closing the sunroof sunshade, avoid forceful contact with its curtain, to prevent damage.

Initialisation

- With the ignition on, try the following steps for initialisation:
  - Press the close button to the fully closed position and hold on for at least 0.5 seconds to initialise the sunshade.
  - If the sunshade does not close fully, calibrate manually. Press and hold the sunshade close button, and release it when the sunshade stops moving. Hold the button again for at least seven seconds, and release it until the sunshade is fully closed and a click sound is heard.

Interior Light Switch

Front interior lights

- Touch an interior light to turn it on or off.



- To enable or disable "Auto Interior Lights", swipe down from the top status bar on the infotainment touchscreen to access the shortcut screen.
- When the vehicle is not powered off, "Auto Interior Lights" is enabled, opening any door and touching the interior light will switch the brightness between high and low levels instead of turning the light off.
- When the vehicle is powered off and "Auto Interior Lights" is enabled, the interior lights will automatically turn off after the door has been open for a period of time. Any other operations during this period restart the timer.

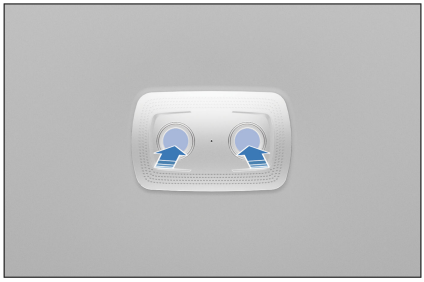
Rear side interior lights*

- Touch the rear side interior light to turn the light on. Touch again to turn it off.



Rear interior lights*

- Touch the rear interior light to turn the light on. Touch again to turn it off.



Ambient Lights*

To enable or disable the function and control the brightness, colour and area of the ambient light* on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **Light**→ **Exterior**.

04 USING AND DRIVING

Charging/Discharging..... 86
Batteries..... 101
Usage Precautions..... 105
Starting and Driving..... 114
Driver Assistance..... 127

Charging/ Discharging

Charging Instructions

Charging Safety Warnings

- The charging connector uses high-voltage current. Minors are prohibited to charge the vehicle or touch the charging equipment. Keep them away from the vehicle during charging.
- Charge the vehicle in a safe environment, and avoid charging in thunderstorms, or areas with hazardous liquids, fire or heat sources, or flammable or explosive items.
- To reduce the risk of electric shock and personal injury, never operate the equipment with wet hands or touch the exposed metal of the charge port or charge base.
- Charging may affect medical electronic devices and even cause serious personal injury or death. If you use any medical electronic device (such as implantable pacemaker or implantable cardiovascular defibrillator), confirm before charging with the device manufacturer whether normal operation of the device will be affected.

Warnings for charging equipment

- Use EV charging equipment that complies with local standards.
  - To avoid charging failure or fire, do not modify, disassemble, or repair the charging equipment and related ports. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider if there is a fault.
  - Ensure the quality of charging equipment.
- Never use the charging equipment if the household power strip cable becomes soft, if the charging connector cable is worn out, if the insulation layer is cracked, or in case of any other damage.
- Never use the equipment if the charging connector, power plug, or power strip is disconnected or broken, or if there is any sign of surface damage.
- Charging equipment grounding instructions:
  - The equipment must be properly grounded. In the event of failure of or damage to the equipment, the grounding cable provides a minimum impedance to circuit discharge, reducing the risk of electric shock.
  - The equipment comes with a ground cable connecting its ground point with that of the power plug, which must match a properly installed and well-grounded power supply outlet.
- When charging, do not place the equipment in the boot, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tyres.

Pre-charging warnings

- Ensure that there is no water or foreign materials in the charge ports of the vehicle, power supply equipment, and charging equipment, nor damage or bad effect caused by metal terminal rust or corrosion. In the event of any of these situations, do not charge.

Warnings during charging

- To prevent serious personal injury, pay attention to the following precautions during charging:
  - Do not touch the metal connection of the charge port, charging connector, or plug.

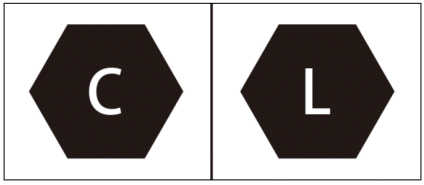
- Do not charge or touch the vehicle in a thunderstorm. Lightning strikes may cause damage to the charging equipment or personal injuries.
- If anything abnormal is found in the vehicle or charging equipment during charging, such as peculiar smell or smoke, stop immediately and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Do not carry out maintenance work during charging.

Post-charging warnings

- Always unplug the charging and discharging equipment and close the charge port door before driving.

Compatibility of vehicle and charging infrastructure*

- Compatibility signs are located on the vehicle's charging socket, the local charging infrastructure (charging stations and sockets), and on the charging cable.



- The signs refer to standardised charging systems in accordance with DIN EN 62196.

Charging Precautions

- Although AC charging can be carried out in any power mode, it is safer to power off the vehicle before charging. The vehicle cannot be powered on during charging.
- If power supply resumes after short-time outage of the external power grid, BYD charging equipment will re-start charging automatically and no re-connection of the charging equipment is required.
- If you need to stop charging before the battery is fully charged, try to set early stop for the charger first instead of directly unplugging the charger.
- When the vehicle is to be parked for an extended period, it is recommended to charge it every 1 month at least.

Precautions for charging equipment

- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle:
  - Before starting the vehicle, check that the charging equipment is disconnected. When the charging connector is loosely inserted, you may still be able to power on the vehicle and drive it. Driving with charging equipment connected will damage the equipment and the vehicle.
  - Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is open.
  - To prevent failure of the charge port door, do not open and close it repeatedly. The recommended time interval for opening and closing the port door is at least one second.
  - If the charge port door and charging connector are frozen due to weather or other reasons, do not forcibly open the charge port door or pull out the charging connector.
  - To prevent damage to the vehicle and the charge port, do not shake the charging connector during charging.
  - Do not force the charging connector in with the immobiliser system activated.
- Take caution when using the equipment.

- The charging cable has a limited reach. Do not pull or twist the charging cable with force.
- Prevent any mechanical impact, such as fall and collide, on the charging/discharging equipment. Take caution when moving the equipment.
- Do not store or use the charging equipment at a temperature above 122°F (50°C).
- Do not place the charging equipment near heaters or other heating sources.

- It is not recommended to use any additional wire or adapter/connector. If an additional adapter is required, choose a suitable cable diameter ($\geqslant$0.0023 in^2 or 1.5 mm^2) and the adapter/connector specifications must meet requirements.

Before charging

- Open the charge port door. Make sure that the charging connector and the charge port are free of foreign objects, and that the protective cap of the charging connector terminal does not get loose or deformed.
- Hold the charging connector, align the connector with the charge port and push it in, making sure that they are properly connected.

During charging

- It is recommended that no one stay in the vehicle during charging.
- The A/C can be used as normal while the vehicle is being charged. However, the charging power may be reduced.
- It is recommended to park the vehicle in a ventilated area. Make sure that the air intake grille is not blocked.
- It is normal that the charging power displayed on the instrument cluster may fluctuate temporarily as the battery temperature control system is working during charging.
- Battery cooling may start, and the compressor, fan and other components work when necessary. It is normal that there will be some noise under the bonnet.
- Before charging is complete, battery equalisation is activated for longer battery life and thus the charging time may be longer.
- The charging cable must not be placed in a spiral during charging, as this will affect heat dissipation.
- In the case of low-temperature charging, the temperature control system can improve the battery's low-temperature charging capacity, but the charging time is prolonged and the heating power consumption is increased. This is normal.
  - In low-temperature regions, it is recommended to charge the vehicle in a heated indoor space.
  - In high-temperature regions, charging in a cool and ventilated place is recommended.
- The estimated time until full charge is displayed on the instrument cluster and may vary slightly across temperatures, SOC, and charging facilities.

After charging

- Stop charging first and make sure the charge port is unlocked.
- Hold the charging connector with one hand and remove the connector by pressing and holding its button*.
- After charging, unlock it first and then pull out the charging connector.
- Do not force the charging connector out while the charge port is locked,

otherwise the charge port may be damaged.

- After unplugging the charging connector, make sure that the charge port's cap and door are closed, otherwise water or foreign materials may enter the port and affect its normal use.

Recommendations for improving the driving experience:

- When the state of charge (SOC) bar on the instrument cluster turns red, the high-voltage battery is about to be exhausted. Please charge it immediately, otherwise the service life of the high-voltage battery will be reduced.
- It is recommended to charge the vehicle immediately after using it for better charging performance.

General Charging Troubleshooting

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
End charging: The charger is connected but charging does not start.	Charging card has insufficient balance or the charging station is malfunctioning.	Check the card balance or contact the charging station staff.
	The AC charging connector is not properly plugged in.	Check the charging connector switch is in the up position, and that the plugs on the charging devices vary in length and connection orientation.
	The low-voltage battery over-discharges.	Connect to the 12 V power from another vehicle. Once the vehicle starts, it will charge the low-voltage battery.
	The grounded outlet complies with local standards but has no power.	Check if the power source has tripped the overload protection; please use a different outlet.
	The vehicle or AC charging connector fails.	Stop charging and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider if power system fault warning light or charging system fault message is found on the instrument cluster.
	The high-voltage battery temperature is too low or too high.	Keep the vehicle in an environment with appropriate temperature and charge it when the temperature becomes normal.
	The high-voltage battery has been fully charged.	When the high-voltage battery is fully charged, the charging will stop automatically.
Charging stops midway.	Charging cable is not connected properly.	Verify if the charging cable is loosely connected.

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
	The power is off.	After power is restored, reconnect the charging connector and start charging within a certain period of time.
	The button* on the charging connector is pressed.	If the button* on the charging connector is pressed, charging will stop. Connect again to start charging.
	High-voltage battery temperature is too high.	Charging will automatically stop. Charge the vehicle when the battery cools down.
	Vehicle or charging pile fails.	If there is any fault prompt for the charging pile or the vehicle, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Charging

- Check before charging:
  - Ensure that power supply equipment, charging connector, charge port, and charging connection device are free of defects, such as cable wear, rusted ports, cracked casings, or foreign objects in the ports.
  - Make sure the plug of the charging connector or port, the socket, or metal terminals are not loose or damaged by rust or corrosion.
  - When the charging connector, the port, the power plug, or the socket is visibly stained or damp, wipe them with a dry and clean cloth to ensure the connection is dry and clean.
- In any of these cases, do not charge. Otherwise, personal injuries may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.
- Protect the charging equipment against water contact on rainy days.

Using Mode 2 Charging Cable

Before mode 2 charging

- To prevent serious personal injury, carefully read warnings on ***P86***.
- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle, carefully read ***P87*** in "Charging Instructions".

Equipment

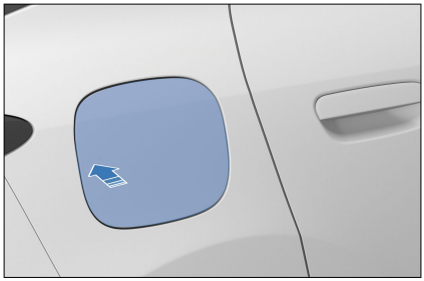
- This Mode 2 charging cable* includes a power plug (complying with local standards), a charging connector, a control box, and a charging cable. The plug should be connected to a standard household power socket, and the charging connector to the vehicle's charge port.
- A household socket meeting local standards must be used in order to avoid line damage or tripping due to high-power charging, which may affect the normal use of other devices.
- Connect the vehicle to an outlet that meets local standards to charge the vehicle.
- Charging time: Refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

REMINDER

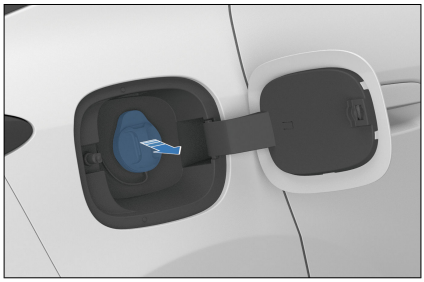
- It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider or local electrician to select an appropriate power supply according to requirements of the charging equipment.
- When using the Mode 2 Charging Cable, activate the charge port immobiliser.

Charging

1. Open the charge port door:
   - With the vehicle doors unlocked and preferably powered off, press the charge port door to open it.



2. Open the AC charge port cap:
   - Open the charge port cap, and make sure that no obstacles exist between the head of the charging connector and the end of the charging socket.



3. Connect to the power supply terminal:
   - Plug the Mode 2 charging cable into a household socket.
4. Connect to the vehicle port:
   - Plug the charging connector correctly into the port.
   - After the charging connector is inserted, the charging connection indicator on the instrument cluster or infotainment touchscreen lights up.

REMINDER

- In the charging process, charging parameters and the charging sign are displayed on the instrument cluster.
  - You can schedule charging on the infotainment touchscreen. See ***P94*** for details.
- Scheduled charging cannot be used when the battery is too low.

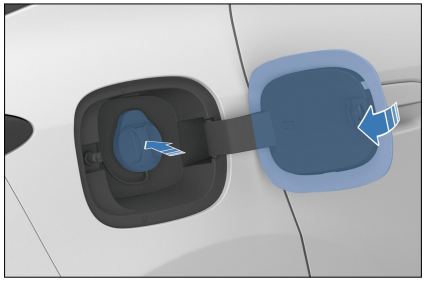
Stopping charging

1. End charging:
   - The charging automatically ends when the vehicle is fully charged.
   - To end the charging early, proceed to the next step.
2. Unplug the charging connector:
   - If the immobiliser system is disabled, you can pull out the charging connector directly.
   - If the immobiliser is activated, press the unlock button on the key or press the door handle microswitch with the key nearby, and then pull out the charging connector.

REMINDER

- To unlock the vehicle, press the unlock button on the key (when charging the vehicle with ignition off) or press the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby).
- When the immobiliser system is activated, unlock the vehicle to release the charge port immobiliser before pulling out the charging connector. The connector has to be pulled out promptly, or the port will re-lock. You can activate or deactivate the immobiliser on the infotainment touchscreen, see ***P99*** for details.
- If the charging connector cannot be removed after unlocking, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking (see ***P100*** in "Charging Port Immobiliser System" for details).
- If you cannot pull the charging connector out directly when the charge port's immobiliser system is deactivated, try to unlock the vehicle and pull it again.

3. Disconnect the power plug.
4. Close the charge port cap and the port door.
5. Store the charging equipment properly.



REMINDER

- Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is fully open.

Using AC Charging Piles*

Before using AC charging piles:

- To prevent serious personal injury, carefully read warnings on ***P86***.
- To prevent damage to charging equipment and the vehicle, carefully read precautions on ***P87***.

Equipment

- AC charging box*:
  - It consists of a charging box, a charging connector, and a connecting cable. For information on circuit breaker and emergency stop switch, see the charging box user manual.
  - Use a standard-compliant household charging box. For how to use the charging equipment, refer to its user manual and follow the operating steps.
- Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.
- Single-phase AC charging pile*
  - Charge the vehicle using a public single-phase AC charging pile.

Since some charging piles are not equipped with charging connectors, AC charging connectors need to be prepared.

- Charging time: refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

Charging

1. Unlock the vehicle, then open the charge port door and cap:
   - See ***P90*** for steps to unlock the charge port door, open the port door and the AC.
2. Connect to the power supply terminal:
   - Skip this step for AC charging piles equipped with charging connectors.
   - Use a self-prepared AC charging connector to connect your vehicle to the single-phase AC charging pile with no charging connector.
3. Connect to the vehicle port:
   - Plug the charging connector into the port and make sure it is tight.
4. Charging settings:
   - Skip this step if a public AC charging pile without any setting option is used.
   - For public single-phase AC charging pile with settings, swipe the card or scan the QR code. See the user manual for charging pile details.
5. The charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.

REMINDER

- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.

REMINDER

- At this point, you can schedule charging on the infotainment touchscreen. See ***P94*** for the configuration process.

Stopping charging

1. End charging:
   - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or charging is complete.
2. Unplug the charging connector:
   - Disconnect as per the instructions in Using Mode 2 Charging Cable.
3. Disconnect the power plug.
   - If Mode 2 charging cable is used, it is recommended to unplug the charging connector from the vehicle first and then the plug from the charging point.
   - Skip this step for AC charging piles equipped with charging connectors.
4. Close the AC charge port door (see instructions for Mode 2 charging).
5. Store the equipment properly.
   - Place the charging connector in its designated location in the charging pile.

Using DC Charging Piles*

Before using a DC charging pile:

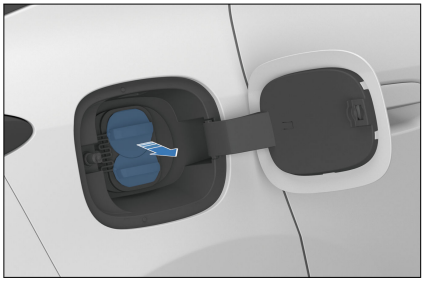
- To prevent serious personal injury, see Charging Safety Warnings in "Charging Instructions" carefully.
- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle, read and observe Charging Precautions in "Charging Instructions".

Equipment

- Charge the vehicle using a public DC charging pile at a charging station.
- Equipment specifications: Please check the instructions for the charging piles.
- Charging time: Refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

Charging

1. Open the charge port door:
   - With the vehicle doors unlocked and preferably powered off, press the charge port door on the right of the vehicle to open it.
2. Open the DC charge port cap:
   - Open the protective caps of the charging connector and vehicle inlet. Make sure that there are no foreign objects on the connector or inlet.



3. Connect to the vehicle port:
   - Plug the charging connector into the port and lock it.
4. Start charging:
   - Operate the charging equipment as instructed to start charging.
5. The charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.
   - In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.

Stopping charging

1. End charging:
   - Charging stops automatically when the preset time is reached or when charging is complete.
2. Unplug the charging connector:
   - Press the release button on the DC charging connector and then remove the connector.
3. Close the charge port cap and the port door.
4. Organise the equipment:
   - When DC charging is complete, organise the charging equipment and return the charging connector to its designated position.

CAUTION

- If the connector cannot be pulled out after charging, contact the charger service provider in a timely manner.
- During high-temperature DC charging, the battery thermal management performance may be affected by the cabin air conditioning, resulting in reduced charging performance and extended charging time. To ensure charging efficiency, it is recommended to keep the A/C off during charging.

Smart Charging

The charging mode can be set on the infotainment system. To access or exit the setting:

- On the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging** → **Smart Charging** to access the scheduled charging setting screen.

- To exit the scheduled charging screen, tap ⮌ or ⌂ .

Setting screen

① Scheduled charging switch

② Charging start time

③ Repeat cycle

④ Settings



- The factory default setting is to charge the vehicle immediately. That is, scheduled charging is disabled.
- To schedule a charging, toggle the scheduled charging ON ①, set the charging start time ② and repeat cycle ③, then save the settings.
- After the schedule is set up successfully, if you connect the charging connector or press the power button to power off the vehicle during the charge waiting period, you will be reminded through the infotainment touchscreen that scheduled charging has been set. Switch to instant charging if needed.
- You can tap the scheduled charging setting icon ④ to turn off the charging connector connected alert and power-off alert in the Scheduled Charging Alert.

CAUTION

- The smart charging function is developed for BYD's AC slow charging equipment only.

CAUTION

Disable this function when using non-BYD-certified AC charging equipment. Otherwise, scheduled or immediate charging may fail due to no response from the equipment, resulting in low SOC or even battery depletion.

REMINDER

- The charge now option on the reminder screen is valid for the current schedule only. To cancel all schedules, toggle scheduled charging off on the corresponding screen.
- Smart charging is dedicated for BYD AC charging piles. If you want to use this feature in a public charging facility, make sure scheduling from the vehicle system is supported.
- When the battery level is low, the vehicle is charged to a certain level before scheduled charging begins. During this process, the infotainment system displays reminders for power-off and charging connector connection, and a corresponding message is displayed on the instrument cluster.

Discharging Instructions*

- This vehicle is equipped with the vehicle-to-load (V2L)* feature.

Equipment description*

- V2L discharge connection device*: The device consists of a discharging connector, a power strip, a cable, and a discharge connector protective cover.

- The equipment used must comply with local standards. See the equipment that came with your vehicle for details.

WARNING

- Do not touch any metal terminal of the discharging socket or the vehicle charge port during discharging.
- Stop discharging immediately if there are any abnormalities such as peculiar smell and smoke.
- See Charging Instructions for discharging safety warnings.
- Store the V2L discharge connection equipment in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.
- When discharging, do not place the equipment* in the boot, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tyres to prevent it from falling and being rolled over by the vehicle and trampled on.
- Never use the equipment if the power strip cable becomes soft, if the charging connector cable is worn out, if the insulation layer is cracked, or if any other damage occurs.
- Never use the device when the discharging connector or power strip is disconnected or broken, or when there is any sign of surface damage.
- The engine starts when the vehicle is discharged to a low SOC. Do not discharge in a confined space or near combustible or explosive materials.

CAUTION

- For precautions concerning use of the discharge connection device, refer to the charging equipment precautions in Charging Precautions.
- Before V2L discharging, ensure that the load is off.

REMINDER

- Before discharging, check the SOC and estimate the driving range. It is better to use this feature at higher SOC.
- When the vehicle is powered off, the static power consumption of the vehicle will increase if the discharging connection device is connected for an extended period without any output. Therefore, removing the discharging connector when the device is not used is recommended.
- BYD's original discharging connection device is required, and the vehicle discharging function may not work properly with non-BYD products.

Discharging

Check before discharging

- Discharging safety warnings are as those given in "Charging Safety Warnings". Carefully read and observe these warnings to prevent serious personal injury.
- Discharging precautions are as those given in "Charging Precautions". Carefully read and observe these precautions to prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle.

- Ensure that the vehicle SOC is at least 15%.
- In any of the cases below, do not discharge. Otherwise, personal injuries may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.
  - There are abnormalities of the V2L discharge connection equipment, such as cracked housing, worn cable, rusted plug, or foreign materials.
  - There is water or foreign material inside the charge port, or the metal terminals are damaged by rust, corrosion, and other abnormalities.

Starting discharging

1. Open the charge port cap and the port door (see ***P90***).
2. Connect the discharge equipment:
   - Firmly connect the discharge connection equipment to the charge port.
3. Start discharging:
   - After the switch button* on the discharging socket is pressed, the socket indicator stays on (red), indicating that the socket can be used.
   - After the equipment is connected, discharging will begin and related information will be displayed on the instrument cluster.

Stopping discharging

1. Stop discharging:
   - Disconnect the load.
   - In an emergency, proceed directly to the next step (which is not recommended).
2. Disconnect the discharge connection device:
   - With doors unlocked, unplug the connector from the charge port. For discharging connectors with a mechanical button, press the button before unplugging.
   - Close the charge port cap and the port door (see ***P90***).
3. Organise the equipment:
   - Store the equipment properly when discharging is complete.

Setting discharging duration

- After the discharge connector is plugged in, V2L discharging will be automatically toggled on and a countdown to discharging will be displayed on the instrument cluster and infotainment touchscreen. The default duration of a discharge set on the infotainment touchscreen is five hours.
- On the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging** → **Vehicle To Load** to access the setting screen.
  - After the vehicle is connected to the discharging connector, toggle **Vehicle To Load** on or off.
  - When the vehicle is discharged to a low SOC, tap the "Start the engine to generate electricity when the power is too low" switch if it is necessary to start the engine to continue discharging.
  - Tap the "Settings" button of single discharge time to set the required discharge duration on the corresponding screen.

CAUTION

- Discharging cannot be toggled on without connecting the connector. In that case, when tapped, the

CAUTION

Vehicle To Load button will be greyed out after a while, which is a normal phenomenon.

- Discharging may stop in advance if the vehicle battery is too low, if battery is lower and no gasoline is available to generate electricity, or if the set discharging time is too long. This is a normal phenomenon.

Target SOC Setting*

- When the vehicle runs in dual-mode condition, the target SOC function is available to save battery power for operations such as rapid acceleration. When the vehicle runs stably, the battery SOC fluctuates around the target SOC.
- The vehicle controller will memorise the last set target SOC.

REMINDER

- When the engine has been started and the vehicle is running at a stable speed, part of the torque produced by the engine will drive the generator to generate electricity and charge the high-voltage battery.
- If the difference between the current SOC and the SOC balance value is large, the balancing time may be long.

Target SOC settings

Target SOC refers to the battery level that you expect the vehicle to maintain during driving. To set this value, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Energy Management**.

- SAVE mode on: Prefer battery power saving, keeping battery power not below the target set as far as possible. If the destination is convenient for vehicle charging, lowering the target SOC help make the best use of the electric driving power and reduce fuel consumption. Otherwise, a higher target SOC is recommended to improve the driving experience.
- SAVE mode off: Prefer fuel economy, but also take battery power keeping into consideration.

CAUTION

- SAVE mode works in HEV mode only, so it does not respond if turned on in EV mode. For a better driving experience, it is better to switch to HEV mode before turning SAVE mode on.

In-Situ Power Generation

During parking, if the SOC is lower than a certain level, the engine drives the generator to charge the high-voltage battery. Therefore, engine running faster than when idle is normal. Power generation stops when the SOC reaches above a certain level.

Mode Memory

- When the vehicle SOC is high, the vehicle will automatically switch to EV mode when it is powered on. EV mode is recommended to be given priority to.
- When the vehicle SOC is moderate, the vehicle defaults to the previous dynamic mode when it is powered on. After power-on, you can manually select the mode with the mode switch.

Power Generation by Pressing the Accelerator Pedal

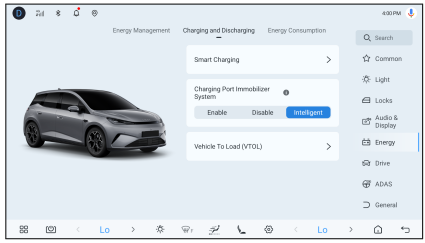
- When the vehicle is in Park and HEV mode, pressing the accelerator pedal while the SOC is below a certain level can trigger the regeneration function.

REMINDER

- It is recommended not to keep using this feature for a long time.
- In special working conditions, such as low or high temperatures, the wattage of power generated is influenced by the charging wattage or the motor generating capacity, causing the value displayed on the instrument cluster to fluctuate.

Charging Port Immobiliser System

- In order to prevent the charging connector from being stolen, the vehicle charge port is anti-theft with the charging port immobiliser system. The charging port immobiliser system is disabled by default. To enable it, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging**.



- When the immobiliser is in Enable or Intelligent mode, unlock the vehicle and unplug the charging connector during charging in the following ways:
  - With the ignition off, press the unlock button on the smart key to unlock.
  - Press the microswitch next to the exterior handle of the driver's side door to unlock (with the smart key nearby).
  - Press the central unlock button on the driver's door to unlock.
  - The charging connector unlocks automatically when the vehicle is fully charged (for "intelligent" mode only).

No.	Charging Port Immobiliser System Status	Door Anti-theft Lock Status	Vehicle Fully Charged or Not	Charging Connector Removable or Not
1	Enabled	Locking	/	No
2	Enabled	Enabled	/	Yes
3	Disabled	Locking	/	Yes
4	Disabled	Enabled	/	Yes
5	Intelligent	Locking	The vehicle is fully charged	Yes

No.	Charging Port Immobiliser System Status	Door Anti-theft Lock Status	Vehicle Fully Charged or Not	Charging Connector Removable or Not
			The vehicle is not fully charged	No
6	Intelligent	Enabled	/	Yes

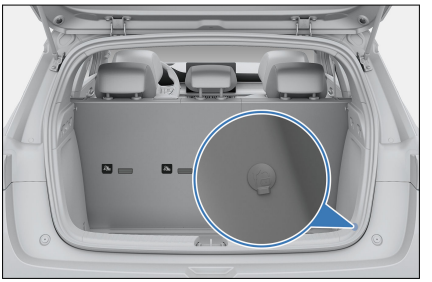
- As shown in the table above, if the vehicle is in state 2/3/4/6, apart from the above-mentioned unlocking operations, you can unlock and pull out the charging connector by pressing its button. However, this may affect the service life of the charge port or charging connector. This is an emergency action that is not recommended to be taken frequently.

CAUTION

- After the charging connector is unlocked, it has to be pulled out promptly, or the port will re-lock after a while.
- After the locked vehicle is fully charged, the charging connector will be automatically unlocked when the charge port immobiliser system is in Disabled or Intelligent mode. When in Enabled mode, the charging connector must be manually unlocked following the above steps.
- To ensure the normal driving after charging, close the charge port door after pulling out the charging connector.

Emergency Unlocking of Charge Port

- When the charging connector cannot be unplugged due to failure of the immobiliser system, unlock the charge port manually and unplug the charging connector.
- Open the boot. There is a dragline for the charging connector on the right side panel inside the boot. Pull the latch to unlock the charging connector.
- Put the cap back after the connector is pulled out.



CAUTION

- In the event of abnormality or function failure, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Driving Range Display*

- The driving range display mode can be adjusted according to your preference. The default setting is standard mode.
- You can change the mode on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **Audio & Display** → **Instrument**.

- Standard mode: displays the driving range based on the result of comprehensive working condition test.
- Dynamic mode: displays the estimated driving range based on the available battery power and current average energy consumption.

- The set driving range display mode is memorised by the system.
  - When the vehicle is powered off and then on, the display mode set last time will be maintained.

REMINDER

- In Dynamic driving range display mode:
  - The driving range on a full charge varies, depending on calculations of the energy consumed in your last drive.
  - The driving range actually displayed will be adjusted based on the state of the vehicle's air conditioner, the driving mode (ECO, NORMAL, SPORT, etc.) selected, and the driver's driving habits, so as to match the vehicle's actual driving range.

Batteries

High-Voltage Battery

- One of the main power sources of the vehicle is high-voltage battery, which is located under the vehicle floor and can be charged repeatedly. The main ways to charge the high-voltage battery through an external power supply are: Using mode 2 charging cable, using AC charging piles, using DC charging piles*, and using motor when the vehicle is braking, coasting, or the engine is on.

WARNING

- Do not disassemble, move, or alter high-voltage battery components and cables because their connectors can cause serious burns or electric shock and may result in personal injury or death. The orange cables are part of the high-voltage wiring harness. Users must not repair the vehicle's high-voltage system by themselves. If any repair is required, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- If the high-voltage battery is damaged, there may be a delayed fire risk. In this case, the vehicle or the damaged battery should be placed under surveillance in a dedicated and secure storage area to prevent a fire from occurring.

CAUTION

- As the high-voltage battery is arranged at the bottom of the vehicle, careful driving is recommended in case of bumpy roads.

REMINDER

- When the ignition is switched on, the high-voltage lines will be connected.
- For new vehicles with normal high-voltage battery status, the pure electric mileage will change due to different driving habits, road conditions, temperatures, and whether the electrical equipment is turned on or off.

REMINDER

- To prolong the battery life and ensure the battery safety, the vehicle switches to trickle charging mode at high SOC, and the charging time may be prolonged.
- Due to the chemical characteristics of the battery itself, the battery capacity of vehicles that have been used for a period of time has natural degradation, and their pure electric mileage will reduce. When you find that the pure electric mileage of your vehicle has decreased, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for check. The store-side inspection can confirm whether the reduction of pure electric mileage is normal.

High-Voltage Battery Maintenance

- For optimal battery performance, use a charging connector to fully charge the battery regularly, and the recommended frequency is once a week at least.
- If the vehicle is to be left sit for over seven days, it is recommended to keep the SOC between 40% and 60% to extend vehicle service life. If this period will be over three months, charge the vehicle fully and discharge it down to 40% to 60% SOC, to avoid battery degradation or even damage.

Low-Temperature Heating for High-Voltage Battery

- In a low-temperature environment, the high-voltage battery heating system starts up to heat the battery, speed up the low-temperature charging and ensure the power performance and driving range of the vehicle.

WARNING

- Non-professionals must not open the high-voltage battery pack. Do not disassemble or dismantle the low-voltage battery. Any organisation or individual to do so shall bear the responsibility for environmental pollution or accidents.

CAUTION

- If the high-voltage battery fails, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- It is recommended to use the vehicle at temperatures between -20°C to 40°C. Higher or lower operating temperatures of the high-voltage battery may prolong the charging time.
- To ensure long term performance, avoid continuously exposing the vehicle to high temperatures or extreme cold environment for over 24 hours.

Recycling the High-Voltage Battery

When an new-energy vehicle is to be scrapped:

1. Take it to a BYD recycling service provider, where the residual value of the high-voltage battery will be assessed.
2. Then take it to a recycling organisation to disassemble the high-voltage battery.

3. Take the battery to the recycling service provider which will buy back the battery.

WARNING

- New energy car owners have the responsibility and obligation to hand over waste high-voltage batteries to the recycling service outlet. Anyone who hands over a used high-voltage battery to any other organisation or individual, or removes/disassembles a high-voltage battery without authorisation, shall be liable for any environmental pollution or safety incident so caused.

Low-Voltage Battery

- The vehicle's low-voltage battery features the intelligent charging function. When the high-voltage battery is fully charged, the vehicle can automatically initiate the high-voltage battery to charge the low-voltage battery, extending its lifespan.

REMINDER

- It is normal that intelligent charging with the ignition "OFF" produces a sound which is usually heard when the ignition is switched on.
- When leaving the vehicle, make sure all electrical equipment is turned off and the doors are closed.

Waking up the Vehicle from Low SOC

Wake-up by the driver's door microswitch*

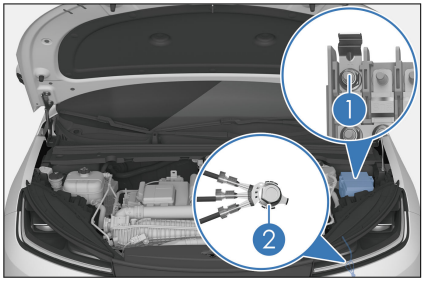
- The low-voltage battery features the dormancy wakeup. After long-term parking, if vehicle finding or unlocking cannot be performed with the smart key, it indicates that the low-voltage battery may have entered a dormant state.
- In this case, press and hold the microswitch on the driver's door handle (while carrying the smart key) to wake up the battery and unlock the vehicle.

REMINDER

- If the low-voltage battery is extremely low, the instrument cluster may display corresponding messages and the vehicle may goes dormant again. Power on the vehicle immediately to charge the low-voltage battery. It is recommended to charge it for more than one hour.

Wake-up by jump start

- When the vehicle cannot be woken up and unlocked using the driver's door microswitch, use the mechanical key to open the door. Then, use an external 12 V power supply and two dedicated jump-start cables to start the vehicle.
- Jump starting can only be performed through the dedicated interface of the under-bonnet PDB. The connection terminals are shown in the illustration.
  - Positive terminal on the front bonnet PDB①
  - Negative terminal on ECU housing②



- If the vehicle cannot be woken up and started by the above steps, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider immediately.

WARNING

- Never jump start another vehicle with this vehicle, because this may damage your low-voltage battery.
- Before jump starting, check the battery conditions. Do not jump start the vehicle with freezing electrolyte.
- Make sure the environment is well-ventilated and free from any fire sources.
- The low-voltage battery contains an intelligent control module. To prevent battery damage, do not disassemble or damage this battery, except in an emergency.
- Disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery before performing parts replacement and vehicle repairs.

CAUTION

- It is recommended that the jump starting be done under the guidance of professionals, as the space for operating the under-

CAUTION

bonnet PDB is limited and circuit-based risks are present.

- Use a 12–14.2 V jump-starting power supply and limit each jump-starting attempt to one minute, or the low-voltage battery may be damaged.
- Do not clean the low-voltage battery with liquids, and take caution to prevent liquid ingress.

Intelligent Charging

- When the low-voltage battery SOC is low, the vehicle can automatically initiate the intelligent charging function to charge the low-voltage battery, extending its lifespan.
- When the high-voltage battery SOC is low, the vehicle may start the engine to generate electricity to support the intelligent charging.
- This model is equipped with the intelligent charging function. It is not necessary to disconnect the low-voltage battery's negative terminal when the vehicle is to be parked for a long period.

REMINDER

- When the low-voltage battery power is low, the intelligent charging will be activated, resulting in the decrease of high-voltage battery SOC or pure-electric driving range displayed on the instrument cluster, which is a normal phenomenon.
- After the vehicle is locked, if the power battery SOC becomes low enough to trigger the engine-start power generation function,

REMINDER

a small amount of fuel will be consumed and a small amount of exhaust emissions will be produced.

Usage Precautions

Break-in Period

- If the powertrain is hard to start or frequently stops turning, inspect the vehicle immediately.
- If the powertrain makes any abnormal sounds, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- If the powertrain has severe coolant and oil leakage, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- The powertrain needs break-in. This should preferably be done within the first 1,243 miles (2,000 km) in HEV-ECO mode. Steady driving instead of high-speed driving is recommended. The following practices effectively prolong vehicle service life:
  - Avoid flooring the accelerator pedal when starting and driving the vehicle.
  - Avoid speeding.
  - Avoid emergency braking within the first 186 miles (300 km).
  - Do not maintain a high or low speed for too long.
  - During the break-in period, the proportion of HEV mode (with the engine involved in working) must not be less than 50% of the driving mileage.

Trailer Towing*

- The vehicle can tow a trailer only when equipped with towing function.
- Do not use the vehicle to tow other vehicles within the first 1,243 miles (2,000 km) of mileage.
- Do not make non-approved modifications. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider to install the towing kit and related software updates. BYD does not assume any responsibility for injuries or damage caused by non-approved modifications.

The towing capacity depends on various factors such as vehicle specifications, loads, road conditions, and trailer specifications. The total towing weight must not exceed the limits below:

Item	Parameter	Note
Maximum towing capacity	1653 lb (750 kg)	Maximum total towing capacity allowed
Maximum vertical load	165 lb (75 kg)	Maximum vertical load allowed on ball joint

- To tow a trailer, adjust the tyre pressure to accommodate additional loads. Keep front tyres inflated to 2.5 bar (250 kPa) and rear tyres to 2.7 bar (270 kPa).

- Observe applicable local laws and regulations regarding towing. For driving safety, avoid speeding and overloading.
- For towing, the technically permissible maximum mass on the rear axle may be exceeded by up to 15% and the technically permissible laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by up to 220 lb (100 kg).. In such cases, the vehicle speed must not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h), and the rear tyre pressure must be at least 0.2 bar (20 kPa) above the pressure recommended for normal driving conditions.
- Towing other vehicles will have an adverse impact on the vehicle, including maneuverability, performance, braking, endurance, economic driving or power consumption.
- BYD does not assume any responsibility for damage or injuries resulting from towing a trailer due to failure to comply with the proper guidelines. Damage caused by towing a trailer is not covered by the warranty.
- For detailed towing instructions, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- The hitch is for towing trailers only. Do not use it to get unstuck or tow trapped vehicles as this may cause vehicle damage and even personal injuries.

Driving Safety Precautions

No Drunk Driving

Even a small amount of alcohol can reduce a driver's ability to respond to traffic condition changes. The higher the level of alcohol, the less responsive the driver will be. Therefore, never drive while under the influence.

No Speeding

Speeding is a major cause of fatal accidents. Faster speeds generally entail higher risk. Therefore, maintain a speed safe for the road traffic conditions.

Keeping the Vehicle Safe for Driving

Tyre bursts and mechanical faults are extremely dangerous. To reduce the possibility of such faults, frequently check the vehicle's condition, and regularly complete the specified inspections.

CAUTION

- Any driver must possess a driver's license before driving a vehicle.
- Do not drive when fatigued.
- Always follow the traffic regulations when driving a vehicle.
- During driving, please focus on driving, and avoid activity unrelated to driving (such as making / receiving phone calls and adjusting buttons).

Suggestions for Vehicle Use

Suggestions for extending the high-voltage battery life:

- When the vehicle is not to be operated for over 7 days, it is recommended that the battery SOC should be kept at 40%–60%, or the high-voltage battery service life may be reduced.

- When the vehicle is not to be operated for over three months, the high-voltage battery must be fully charged and then discharged to 40%–60%. Otherwise, over-discharge may lead to battery performance degradation or even damage. Any vehicle fault or damage so caused will not be warranted.
- During operation of the vehicle, if the instrument cluster displays the pure electric driving mileage as 0, it indicates the battery SOC is low. In this case, charge the high-voltage battery in time and avoid operating the vehicle with low SOC for a long time.
- For optimal battery performance, use a charging connector to fully charge the battery regularly, and the recommended frequency is once a week at least.
- To maintain long-term performance, avoid continuously exposing the vehicle to an environment with a temperature above 60°C or below -30°C for over 24 hours.
- If the tray dented inward or there is scarification under the battery package tray, it is suggested to check at a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- During operation of the vehicle, avoid repeated rapid acceleration or deceleration whenever possible.
- During operation of the vehicle, avoid operating the vehicle continuously for a long time whenever possible; otherwise, the excessively high battery temperature will affect vehicle performance.
- In the event of fault prompts on the instrument cluster, go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- When the high-voltage battery temperature is high, the vehicle performance will be limited to some extent. In this case, stop the vehicle and wait until the temperature drops before operating.

REMINDER

- If the meter drops to 0, the battery must be recharged. If it is not recharged within 7 days, the battery may suffer permanent damage. Such damage is not covered by BYD warranty terms.
- Driving range depends on many factors, such as the vehicle's available power, vehicle age (current battery life), weather, temperature, road conditions and driving habits. Compared with under normal temperatures, the driving range is somewhat reduced and power performance will also be affected in low or high temperature environments.

Fuel

Fuel Selection

- The use of correct fuel is the basis for realizing the best performance of the engine, and also the key to controlling emissions and protecting relevant components.
- Please use unleaded gasoline as per your local standards.

CAUTION

- Do not use leaded gasoline. The use of leaded gasoline leads to the failure of the three-way catalytic convertor and the malfunction of the control device for exhaust pollution, as well as the increase in maintenance costs.

CAUTION

- The engine damage or excessive emission caused by the use of improper fuel is not covered by the warranty.
- The use of low-grade or inferior gasoline reduces the service life of the engine.

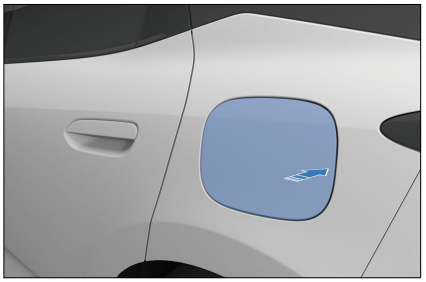
Refueling

- The fuel door is located on the left side of the vehicle. Park with the left side close to the fuel pump.
- Turn off the vehicle before refueling.

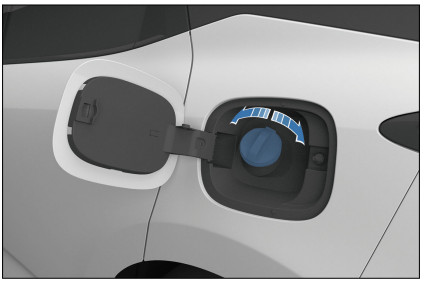
1. Press the refueling button. The instrument cluster prompts " ⚠ Fuel tank pressure is being released. Please wait." When the pressure release is complete, it prompts " ⚠ Fuel tank pressure released. Please refuel."



2. Press the fuel door, and it automatically pops open slightly.



3. Open the fuel door and turn the fuel cap counterclockwise to remove it.



- The fuel cap is attached to the vehicle with a tether to prevent loss. While refueling, place the fuel cap on the holder inside the fuel door.

4. After refueling, tighten the fuel cap clockwise, then close the fuel door.

WARNING

- Fuel is highly flammable. Observe the following precautions during refueling:
  - Refuel outdoors whenever possible.
  - Do not smoke while refueling to prevent fire or explosion.
  - Do not remove the fuel cap immediately after opening the fuel door. In hot weather, if the fuel cap is removed too quickly, pressurised fuel may spray out and cause injury.
  - After refueling, immediately wipe off any spilled fuel.
  - Refueling and charging must not be performed at the same time. Do not refuel while the charging connector is plugged in. Keep a safe distance from flammable materials to avoid equipment damage or injury caused by fuel combustion.

CAUTION

- Stop refueling after the nozzle automatically clicks off. Do not overfill the fuel tank. Leave space for fuel expansion due to temperature changes.
- After refueling, check that the fuel cap and fuel door are properly closed.
- If the fuel cap is not tightened properly, will display on the instrument.
- If refueling is not completed within 15 minutes after opening the fuel door, close it and reopen before refueling again. Otherwise, fuel may splash back.

Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life

- Saving fuel is simple and easy, and it helps prolong the vehicle's service life. Here are some tips for saving fuel and repair costs:
  - Constant speeds save fuel. Sudden acceleration, sharp turns and emergency braking increase consumption.
  - Keep a constant speed according to traffic conditions. Each deceleration or acceleration of the vehicle consumes additional fuel.
  - Using the A/C adds extra load to the engine, which increases fuel consumption. Turn off the A/C when it is not needed to help reduce fuel usage. When outside temperatures are moderate, use fresh air mode.
  - Make sure tyre pressure is correct. Insufficient tyre pressure causes tyre wear and fuel waste.
  - Avoid long-term idling of the engine. If you are in a low-traffic area and have to wait for a long time, it is better to turn off the engine and start it later.
  - Do not stop the vehicle to warm up the engine. Instead, drive slowly immediately after starting the vehicle to let the engine reach the working temperature as soon as possible and reduce the emission of harmful substances. In special environments at extremely low temperatures, you can keep a higher idle speed by slightly stepping on the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is in Neutral under "HEV-SPORT" mode, and then start driving slowly after the warm-up.
  - Cold start: When the engine is cold, avoid high engine speeds or hard acceleration immediately after starting. It is recommended to drive gently until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
  - Avoid continuous acceleration and deceleration. Frequent stop and start cause fuel waste.
  - Avoid unnecessary parking or braking. Maintain a steady speed and follow traffic lights to minimise the number of stops. When driving on roads without traffic lights, keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead to avoid sudden braking, which also helps reduce brake wear.
  - Do not drive on roads with heavy traffic or traffic jams as much as possible.
  - Avoid resting your foot on the brake pedal when there is no braking demand, as this can cause wear, overheating, and fuel waste.
  - Keep moderate speeds in motorways. Higher vehicle speed consumes more fuel. Maintaining

vehicle speed within the economical speed range can save fuel.

- Keep front wheels properly aligned. Avoid collision with kerbstones and drive slowly on rough roads. An inaccurate front wheel alignment causes excessive tyre wear and increases the engine load and fuel consumption.
- Keep the bottom of the vehicle clean and mud free. This reduces vehicle weight and prevents corrosion.
- Adjust the vehicle to keep it at its best working status. Such conditions as dirty air filters, much carbon deposit in spark plugs, dirty, deteriorated or viscous engine oil and lubricating oil, and unadjusted brakes worsen the engine performance and waste fuel. Regular maintenance must be carried out to ensure a long service life of all components and reduce operating costs. If the vehicle is often driven under severe conditions, the maintenance interval shall be shortened.

REMINDER

- Do not coast in Neutral gear.

Carrying Luggage

- This vehicle has multiple storage spaces. Overloading or improper accommodation may affect maneuverability, stability and normal operation of the vehicle, and reduce its safety.
- The glove box, storage boxes on interior trim panels and seatback pockets are designed for small and light objects, while the boot for large and heavy objects.
- Long items can be loaded by folding the rear seat backrests. Overloading or improper accommodation may affect maneuverability, stability and normal operation of the vehicle, and reduce its safety.
- Make sure the vehicle's total load (vehicle + passengers + luggage) remains within the specified maximum weight.

WARNING

- Overloading and improper accommodation may affect stability and vehicle control, which may lead to accidents.
- Observe the maximum weight limit and other loading guidelines in this manual.
- Do not carry highly magnetic items, as they might interfere in the vehicle's normal operations.

Carrying Luggage in the Passenger Area

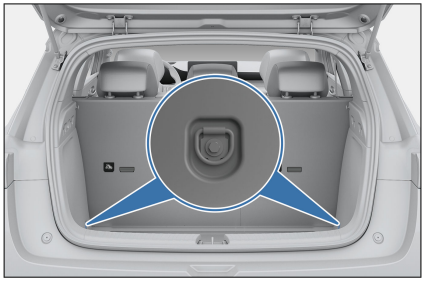
- All items that could be thrown inwards and thus injure occupants in case of a collision must be properly placed and secured.
- Do not place any objects on the inner side of rear window, which will block your line of sight and will be thrown up inside the vehicle in case of collision.
- Ensure that items placed on the floor behind the front seat do not roll under the seat, so as to avoid affecting the driver's ability to control the pedals or normal seat adjustment. Do not stack items to a height taller than the front seatbacks.
- Make sure the glove box is always closed while driving. If the glove box is open, the occupant's knees may be injured in case of a collision or an emergency stop.

REMINDER

- Do not pile up toys in the vehicle, as this may affect driving safety and present a hazard to the children, especially in case of emergency braking or collision.

Carry Luggage in the Boot

- Place luggage evenly in the boot. Put heavier items at the bottom and as far in as possible.
- Secure items with ropes or straps so that they will not move while driving. Do not stack items to a height taller than seatbacks.
- The side panels of the boot are equipped with luggage tie-down hooks.



Roof Rack*

- Storing luggage on the roof rack will increase overall energy consumption and change the way the vehicle drives and handles.
- When installing the roof rack, read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.
- Try to load the roof beam evenly and keep the centre of gravity low. Loads on the roof rack may elevate the overall centre of gravity, which might alter your driving experience.
- When driving a heavily loaded vehicle, take extra precautions, drive slowly, and increase your following distance.
- The maximum recommended load evenly distributed over the beam is: 165 lb (75 kg).

CAUTION

- Luggage must not be put on the roof metal sheet directly. The roof metal sheet is not designed for loading.
- Use the roof rack properly and fasten the luggage on the beam.
- Make sure the luggage is securely fastened on the roof rack before driving and during parking.

Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning

- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO). If the vehicle is properly maintained, CO will not enter the cabin during normal driving.
- Check the exhaust system for leaks under the following conditions:
  - The exhaust sound is abnormal.
  - The vehicle has been involved in an accident that may have damaged the underside of the vehicle.

WARNING

- Inhalation of CO, which is toxic, may cause loss of consciousness and can be life-threatening. Avoid any enclosed spaces or activities that may lead to CO poisoning.
- High concentrations of CO can accumulate rapidly in enclosed areas, such as a garage. Do not

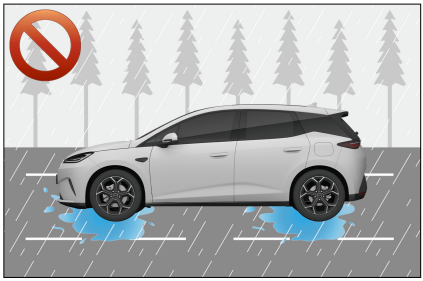
WARNING

start the engine with the garage door closed. Even if the garage door is open, run the engine only as long as necessary to move the vehicle out of the garage.

- When the boot is open, exhaust gases may be drawn into the cabin, creating a hazardous condition. If the vehicle must be operated with the boot lid open, open all windows and set the climate control system as follows:
  - Select "fresh air" mode.
  - Select "face-level" or "foot-level airflow mode"
  - Set the fan speed to "High".

Wading into Water

- Before driving into flooded areas, check the water depth and make sure it does not exceed the vehicle's lower edge.
- If crossing a flooded area is necessary, turn off the air conditioner and keep acceleration steady to slowly cross over.



- Never stop, back up, or turn off the vehicle in flooded areas.
- Driving through deep water may wet brakes. Be careful when this is unavoidable.
- After crossing over, press the brake pedal several times to dry out the disks and recover brake performance.
- Do not wade into water unless absolutely necessary.

WARNING

- The presence of water or mud in the braking system may delay brake response and extend braking distance.
- Carefully apply any wet brake, and remove ice or water on it.
- Avoid emergency braking as far as possible after driving through any waterlogged road section.
- If the vehicle drives on the waterlogged road, prevent water from entering the motor, otherwise the motor will be damaged seriously. Vehicle faults and damage so caused are not covered by the warranty.
- After the vehicle drives through waterlogged road sections, vehicle components, such as drive system, driving system and automotive electric system may also be damaged seriously. Such damage is not covered by the vehicle's warranty either.
- Be sure to find a sheltered place when charging the vehicle on rainy days. If the vehicle is immersed in water or wades through water over the doorsill, which may cause water ingress in high-voltage components, promptly contact a BYD authorised dealer or

WARNING

service provider for testing and troubleshooting.

- Do not drive the vehicle on the road where the depth of accumulated water exceeds half of the tyres.

Influence of water ingress in high-voltage components:

- Water getting into high-voltage components, which are electronic devices, may not be fully dried out by any means.
- Water ingress seriously compromises insulation of high-voltage components, and conductive substances in water may lead to short circuit of high-voltage components or such risk in the entire high-voltage system. This significantly affects the safety and service performance of the vehicle.
- The reduced ingress protection rating and voltage withstanding performance due to water in high-voltage components pose a high safety risk.

Fire Prevention

To prevent vehicle fires in a timely and effective manner, pay attention to the following during use of the vehicle:

- Do not keep the accelerator pedal pressed while driving. This may cause the engine to run at high speed.
- No flammable or explosive items are allowed in the vehicle.
  - Temperatures may reach 70°C in a vehicle exposed to direct sunlight in summer. Therefore, flammable and explosive items, such as lighters, cleaning agents and perfumes, stored in the vehicle can cause a fire or even explosion easily.
- Make sure cigarettes are thoroughly put out.
  - Smoking is harmful to your health and may cause a fire. Cigarettes that not thoroughly put out may cause a fire.
- It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for regular vehicle checks.
  - Check oil leakage in the engine compartment regularly, and clean up the oil dirt and oil stain on the engine in time.
  - Check vehicle wiring, connections, wiring harnesses, insulation, and fixed position regularly. Deal with identified problems promptly.
- Do not refit vehicle wiring or add any unauthorised electrical appliance.
  - The addition of extra electrical appliances, such as high-power audio systems, and light fixtures, may overload and overheat the wiring harness and increase the risk of fire. Improper refitting of electrical appliances or wiring may cause a fire due to contact resistance and abnormal heating.
  - Other replacement wires or fuses in excess of relevant electrical rating are strictly prohibited.
- Select a proper parking location.
  - When parking the vehicle, try to avoid sun exposure.
  - When the vehicle is parked, especially in summer, do check whether there are any flammables such as dry grasses, dead woods, leaves or wheat straws under the vehicle. If any, a fire may be caused

as the temperature of the three-way catalytic convertor rises after a long-term drive.

- When the vehicle is running, avoid driving on the road sections piled up with flammables such as dry leaves, wheat straws and grasses, or immediately stop the vehicle to check whether any flammables are carried along after passing such road sections. When parking the vehicle, try to avoid sun exposure.

- Disconnect the negative cable of the low-voltage battery when the vehicle is being serviced or repaired.
- Keep a lightweight fire extinguisher in the vehicle and know how to use it.
  - In order to ensure vehicle safety, a fire extinguisher should be equipped in the vehicle, and be checked and replaced regularly. Also, you should familiarise yourself with use of the fire extinguisher and be prepared for any accidents.
- In the event of a fire in the vehicle, take effective measures in a timely and calm manner to minimise any losses.
  - Fires often show early warning signs, such as abnormal noises or odours from the vehicle. If any abnormalities are detected, stop and turn off the vehicle immediately. Use a fire extinguisher to put out the fire if necessary.
  - Call the fire alarm in time, and also dial the insurance company's reporting number and ask the company to come to the fire site for handling.
- Locate the source of the fire. If smoke is coming from the front compartment, do not open the bonnet immediately. Opening the bonnet may allow air to enter and intensify the fire. There are limited combustible materials in the front compartment. Keeping the bonnet closed may help slow the fire and make it easier to extinguish. Use the onboard fire extinguisher to spray through the gap of the bonnet, aiming at the source of the fire. You may also seek help from passing vehicles. If multiple fire extinguishers are available and no visible flames are visible from outside, open the bonnet to put it out.
- If the fire brigade is involved, ask for a duty performance certificate and a description of fire cause.
- After occurrence of the accident, contact the insurance company for post-event handling in a timely manner.

REMINDER

- In order to mitigate losses in the event of an accident, the purchase of fire loss insurance is recommended.

Starting and Driving

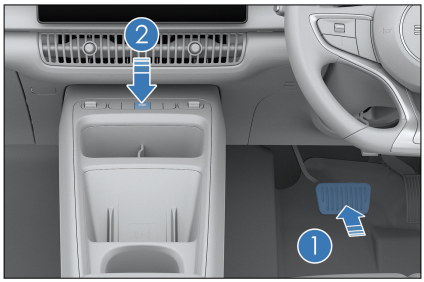
Starting the Vehicle

In normal cases, start the vehicle as below:

- Carry a valid smart key with you, depress the brake pedal ① and press the START/STOP button ② at the same time, and then the OK indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is ready for driving.
- Shift to Drive or Reverse, and then the electronic parking brake will be released automatically. Do not start driving the vehicle until hearing

a motor release sound from the electronic parking brake system.

- If the vehicle fails to start and the instrument cluster displays "Turn the steering wheel to unlock"*, follow the on-screen prompt by turning the steering wheel, then repeat the starting procedure.



Situations when the vehicle cannot power on

- The vehicle cannot power on in the following situations:
  - After you press the START/STOP button, if the smart key system warning light turns on, message "No key detected" is displayed on the instrument cluster, and a beep sounds, the key may not be in the vehicle or cannot be detected due to interference.
  - The key is somewhere unsuitable for detection, such as on the floor, in the cup holder, boot, or storage compartment.
- Pressing the START/STOP button may not enable the start function due to:
  - If the electronic smart key does not work, the smart key system warning indicator on the instrument cluster flashes, and the message "Low key battery" is displayed, the key battery may have run out. Follow the descriptions in ***P234*** and replace the smart key battery as soon as possible.
  - Except for causes mentioned above, the smart access and start system also fails to work normally under some conditions due to different service environments. See ***P61*** for details.

Starting the vehicle in emergencies:

- Engage the parking brake firmly.
- Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories.
- Shift into Park or Neutral.
- Switch the ignition off.
- The electronic smart key is in the vehicle.
- Press and hold the START/STOP button for more than 15 seconds to start the vehicle.

CAUTION

- Do not touch the START/STOP button while driving.

Remote Start

Starting the vehicle

1. Press and hold the start/stop button on the smart key for 2 seconds to start the vehicle. After it is started, turn signals will flash three times.
2. If there is no valid operation within 10 minutes after remote start, the vehicle powers off and turn signals flash twice.



3. Press and hold the remote start/stop button on the electronic smart key for 2 seconds. The vehicle powers off, and turn signals flash twice.

Auto Power On/Off*

- Auto power on/off is disabled by factory default. You can enable it in the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Comfort Driving**.
- When auto power on is enabled, power on the vehicle in either of the following ways:
  - Method 1: Unlock with a valid smart key, microswitch, NFC key*, or BYD App*, and then open the driver's door for the first time while carrying a valid key.
  - Method 2: Carry a valid smart key, NFC key*, or use the BYD App* and then press the brake pedal. The vehicle is ready to drive.
- When auto power off is enabled, power off the vehicle in either of the following ways:
  - Method 1: Press the START/STOP button.
  - Method 2: Shift to Park, and lock from the outside with a valid smart key, NFC key* or microswitch.

REMINDER

- Auto power on is operational only when the driver's door is opened for the first time after unlocking.
- If a door other than the driver's door is first opened after unlocking:
  - When the ignition is still off, opening the driver's door the first time switches it on.
  - When the ignition has been switched on and then off, opening the driver's door does not switches it back on.
- When auto power on is disabled, the brake pedal and the START/STOP button must be pressed to power on the vehicle.
- Auto power on is not operational when the bonnet is open.
- To prevent false triggering, BYD App* can only lock but not power off the vehicle.

Driving

Driving Energy Settings

- During driving, energy is recovered through regenerative brakes when the vehicle decelerates. For higher efficiency, do not accelerate or decelerate the vehicle unnecessarily.
- You can set the regenerative braking intensity according to your driving habits on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **Energy** → **Energy Management** → **Regenerative Braking** so that he vehicle delivers the optimal regenerative braking based on the chosen mode and actual driving conditions.
  - High: Provides maximum energy recovery, resulting in a higher vehicle deceleration.
  - Standard: Requires longer deceleration time and coast distance than the High mode.
- You can select the regeneration intensity based on your preferred

deceleration sense when releasing the accelerator pedal. Different deceleration senses deliver different driving experiences.

WARNING

- Do not set the regeneration braking intensity when driving at high speed. Distraction could result in an accident.

CAUTION

- When the battery temperature is too low or too high, or when the battery SOC is high, regenerative braking may be limited.
- Regenerative braking cannot replace conventional braking. In scenarios requiring strong deceleration or when driving downhill, the driver should apply brakes as needed.
- The set regenerative braking intensity is stored and remains effective after the vehicle is powered off and restarted.

- In HEV mode, the engine automatically starts and stops as needed to charge the battery or provide additional power. In some conditions, the engine may start, or stop if it has started.
- Vehicle power is lower at low battery SOC than that at high battery SOC.

Kick-Down function*

- When climbing a slope or requiring rapid acceleration, depress the accelerator pedal close to its end position. As the pedal resistance increases, the Kick-Down function is triggered, raising the engine RPM to provide greater power.
- The higher the battery charge, the more powerful the battery discharge, and the engine will operate normally, providing a better acceleration experience.
- Faults of the battery, generator, or engine affect Kick-Down power output.
- Frequent triggering of the Kick-Down function will cause the battery level of the vehicle to drop rapidly.

Safety Check before Driving

Before driving long distances, carry out a safety check or, alternatively, take the vehicle to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection.

Exterior

- Tyres: check tyre pressure and carefully inspect tyres for any cut, damage, foreign material, anomaly, and excessive wear.
- Lug nuts: ensure all nuts are fitted and tightened.
- Leaks: Check for fluid deposits under the vehicle after it has been parked for a while. Inspect for leaks of fuel, engine oil, coolant, or other liquids. However, it is normal for a small pool of water to form due to the air conditioning system.
- Lighting: make sure headlights, position lights, turn signals and all other lights are working normally. Check headlight intensity.

Interior

- Seat belts: Check whether seat belts can be properly fastened. Verify that seat belts are not worn or scratched.
- Instrument cluster: Particularly, verify that maintenance indicator, instrument cluster lighting, and defroster work properly.

- Brake pedal: Verify that there is enough space for the brake pedal to work.
- Low-voltage battery and cables: Check connectors for any corrosion or looseness and any cracks in the low-voltage battery housing.

In the front compartment

- Spare fuses: Verify that spare fuses of all rated charges in the fuse box are available.
- Coolant level: Verify that coolant level is correct.
- Fuel pipe: Inspect the fuel lines for oil leaks and loose connections.

Check after starting

- Exhaust system: Check the exhaust system for leakage. In case any anomaly is found, have it repaired.
- Engine oil level: After the engine is warmed up, stop it for 10 minutes, park the vehicle on the flat ground, and check the oil level, see ***P225***.
- Instrument cluster: Confirm that the maintenance indicator and the speedometer work normally.
- Brakes: In a safe area, verify that the vehicle maintains a straight driving direction.
- Other abnormalities: Check for loose parts, leaks, and unusual noises.

Preparations before Driving

- Check the surroundings before getting into the vehicle.
- Adjust seat position, seatback angle, cushion height, headrest height, and the steering wheel angle and height.
- Adjust interior rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- Close all doors.
- Fasten the seat belts.

Fuel-Efficient Driving

Fuel consumption and driving range are influenced by various factors. Adopting proper driving habits and performing regular maintenance can help extend driving range, reduce fuel consumption, and benefit the environment.

- Drive in ECO mode whenever possible.
- Keep the vehicle in good condition.
  - Maintenance: regular maintenance ensures a longer service life and optimal efficiency.
  - Check tyre pressure regularly: check the tyre pressure at least twice a month, and before long trips. Adjust if necessary. Low tyre pressure increases rolling resistance, resulting in higher energy consumption and increased tyre wear.
- Maintain an efficient driving speed
  - Maintaining an efficient driving speed can effectively improve driving range and reduce energy consumption. Driving too fast or too slow is not conducive to energy saving. While ensuring safety, try to keep the vehicle at an efficient speed.
- Drive anticipatively
  - While ensuring driving safety:
  - Avoid unnecessary rapid acceleration and braking.
  - Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.
  - When approaching a red light, release the accelerator pedal in advance and allow the vehicle to coast.

- Maintain a steady speed whenever possible.

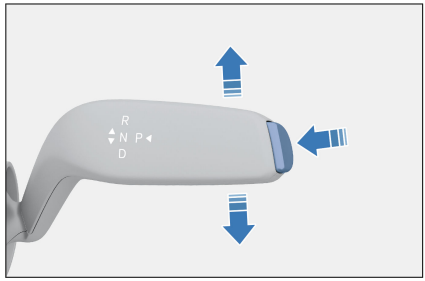
- Use the regenerative braking properly
  - While ensuring safety, select an appropriate braking force according to different road conditions to match the vehicle's driving state. To maximise energy recovery, apply the brake gently to decelerate and avoid sudden braking.
- Reduce unnecessary items in the vehicle
  - Additional weight increases energy consumption.
- Use the A/C system properly
  - Heating and cooling consume a large amount of energy, which will significantly reduce driving range and increase energy consumption. Proper use of the air conditioning system can effectively reduce energy consumption.
- Turn off unnecessary functions
  - In-vehicle heating features (such as seat heating*) consume a large amount of electrical energy. Turn them off when not needed.

REMINDER

- Do not drive the vehicle under heavy load during the break-in period, and do not exceed the maximum speed.
- To reduce wear and tear on the vehicle, it is recommended to accelerate gently instead of pressing the accelerator abruptly.

Gear Shift Controls

- The gear position of the gear shift controls is marked on the gearshift lever. Pull the lever up or down to switch between "R", "N" and "D" and press the button on the end of the lever to switch to the "P" position.
- After starting the vehicle, press the brake pedal and push the gear shift lever up or down to shift from "P" to other gears.
- "P" gear is for parking. Press the button to park the vehicle.



WARNING

- To prevent damaging the transmission, press the "P" button only after the vehicle has completely stopped.

- "R": Reverse, used only when the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- "N": Neutral, used for temporary stop. Under all circumstances, always shift into Park before getting off.
- "D": Drive, shift to Drive gear to drive the vehicle normally.
- Turn the ignition on before shifting into "D".
- Shifting out of Park or into a driving gear requires pressing the brake pedal. For details, see the prompt message on the instrument cluster.
- To prevent unintended vehicle movement, press the "P" button once the vehicle has stopped completely. The electronic parking brake (EPB) is

automatically applied and the EPB indicator lights up.

- If the shift is successful, the lever returns to its middle position automatically after it is released.

WARNING

- Transmission may be seriously damaged due to lack of lubrication if the vehicle is allowed to move for too long after the motor is turned off and "N" gear is engaged.
- When the motor is running and the vehicle is in the "R"/"D" gear, always stop the vehicle by stepping on the brake pedal, as there is still force transmitted from the actuator and the vehicle can travel slowly even in its idle condition.
- If you want to shift a gear while driving forward, do not step on the accelerator pedal to prevent accidents.
- Never shift to "R" or press the "P" button while the vehicle is moving, in order to prevent accidents.
- It is not recommended to allow the vehicle to go down a ramp when it is in the "N" or "P" gear, even if the vehicle is not started.
- If the EPB indicator fails to turn on after the vehicle is shifted into "P" go to the infotainment touchscreen to enable the EPB. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)

Be sure to engage EPB every time before parking and leaving the vehicle.

Engaging EPB manually

Drop down the shortcut menu to activate EPB. When the vehicle is not in Park and EPB is released, pressing the brake pedal engages EPB to apply an appropriate parking brake force. The indicator on the instrument cluster flashes and then becomes steady on to indicate that EPB is engaged. The "EPB activated" message is also displayed.

CAUTION

- When Ⓟ flashes, EPB is working. If the vehicle is on a slope, do not release the brake pedal until Ⓟ is steady on. Otherwise the vehicle may move down.

Engaging EPB Automatically

This function is designed to improve vehicle safety. Excessive reliance on or frequent use of the function is not recommended. For safety, make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park and the EPB is engaged before getting off.

Switching the ignition off

- When the ignition is switched off, EPB is engaged automatically and Ⓟ lights up on the instrument cluster.

Shifting into Park

- Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle steadily and shift into Park. EPB is engaged automatically. Do not release the brake pedal until Ⓟ on the instrument cluster stops flashing and

becomes steady on and the "EPB ON" message is displayed.

- Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete stop. If the driver's door is opened while the vehicle is in Drive or Reverse, the vehicle will be automatically shifted to Park and the EPB will be engaged. Do not release the brake pedal until the indicator Ⓟ on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on with an "EPB ON" message displayed.

WARNING

- Refrain from excessively utilizing the automatic EPB engagement triggered by opening the driver's door, as it may result in the EPB not engaging properly or insufficient clamping force, leading to rollaway risks. For safety, make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park and the EPB is engaged before getting off.
- Do not release the brake pedal early in the process, especially when the vehicle is stopped on a slope, to prevent it from rolling.

Automatic EPB Release upon Vehicle Start

Releasing by shifting gear

- With the vehicle parked, start the vehicle, press and hold the brake pedal, and shift from Park or Neutral into a driving gear such as Drive or Reverse. EPB is released automatically, the indicator goes off, and the "EPB released" message is displayed.

CAUTION

- Be sure to always press and hold the brake pedal when shifting gears. Release the pedal only after the intended gear is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Within several seconds after the vehicle is started, the EPB system performs a power-on self-test. During this process, the EPB system does not respond to any operations.

Releasing by pressing the accelerator pedal

- When the vehicle has been shifted into Drive or Reverse and the EPB function has been enabled manually, press the accelerator pedal slowly to a certain degree. EPB is released automatically and Ⓟ turns off with the message "EPB released" displayed.

Emergency Braking When Brake Pedal Fails

- If braking fails or is blocked, press and hold the "P" button for over 2 seconds for emergency braking.

WARNING

- For safety considerations, refrain from using EPB for braking in normal driving. It is preferred to be used when the brake pedal fails or is blocked.
- As the EPB cannot go beyond the physical limit of road adhesion, activating the emergency brake function may result in vehicle drift, sideslip or deflection when the vehicle passes through bends or dangerous/heavy-traffic road sections, or when the vehicle is driven under severe weather

WARNING

conditions. Be careful to avoid any possible accident.

CAUTION

- For safety considerations, refrain from using the "P" button for emergency braking in normal driving. If the brake pedal fails or is blocked, use the emergency braking function while you can always keep the vehicle under control and drive normally.

EPB Trailer Mode

The EPB trailer mode is designed for the situation when EPB is automatically engaged with the ignition off. When the vehicle needs to be powered off for towing, or when it malfunctions, you can switch on the trailer mode to exit parking with EPB.

- On the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **Drive** → **Overhaul** → to enable **EPB Trailer Mode**.
- EPB trailer mode can be activated when all the following conditions are met:
  - The vehicle is in Park.
  - Press the brake pedal.
  - The charging connector is not connected, and the vehicle is not being charged.

CAUTION

- When the activating conditions of EPB trailer mode are not met, a corresponding prompt message displays on the infotainment touchscreen.

CAUTION

- After activating the EPB trailer mode, the corresponding screen always displays on the infotainment touchscreen unless you tap to exit the EPB trailer mode.
- When the vehicle is on a slope and you need to enable the EPB trailer mode, do not release the brake pedal during the process to avoid vehicle slipping.

- EPB trailer mode can exit when any of the following conditions is met:
  - Disable the EPB trailer mode on the infotainment touchscreen.
  - Press the "P" button.
  - Charging starts after the charging connector is connected.

EPB Indicator

- When the vehicle is powered on, if the EPB is engaged, Ⓟ on the instrument cluster is solid on.
- When the vehicle is powered off, if the EPB is engaged, Ⓟ comes on the instrument cluster and then turns off in a few seconds.
- When the vehicle is powered on, the EPB system starts self-check. On the instrument cluster, ⓘ should turn on and then off in several seconds. If it does not, the EPB or braking system may be faulty. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection immediately.

EPB Operating Sound

- EPB motor noises can be heard while the EPB is being engaged or released.
- If there is a burning smell or unusual noises after emergency braking is activated, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider immediately.

WARNING

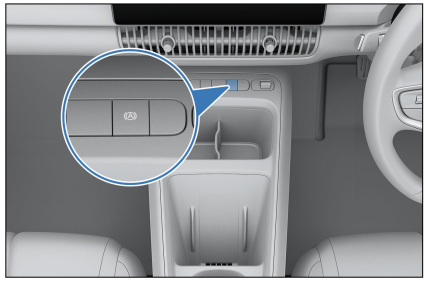
- To prevent the vehicle from moving, make sure the vehicle is in Park and EPB is engaged before leaving the vehicle.
- To prevent serious accidents, never allow any passenger in the vehicle to operate the EPB button when the vehicle is running.
- When the EPB switch is pulled or released, the brake pedal must be pressed to prevent the vehicle from moving, and the subsequent locking of the gearshift that occurs because EPB cannot provide a sufficient parking force.

Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)

The automatic vehicle hold (AVH) is activated automatically when the vehicle needs to be stationary for longer periods of time, such as in traffic jams on a slope or waiting at traffic lights.

AVH standby

- When the ignition is on, press the AVH switch to enable the function. The AVH standby indicator Ⓐ is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Press the AVH switch again to disable AVH.



AVH activated

- When the AVH standby indicator Ⓐ is solid on, press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero) to activate AVH. AVH is now activated with Ⓐ displayed on the instrument cluster.

CAUTION

- For AVH to be activated, all of the follow conditions must be met:
  - The driver's seat belt is fastened and the doors are closed.
  - Intelligent power braking system and electronic park brake (EPB) systems are normal.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal, shifting into Park, or engaging the EPB manually returns AVH to standby.
- The AVH is off by factory default.

AVH running

- The AVH runs normally when it is activated, brake lights and the high-mount brake light are on, and the AVH indicator Ⓐ on the instrument cluster is solid on.
- The AVH function exits to the standby mode after the vehicle stops for 10 minutes, with the AVH standby

indicator Ⓐ lighting up and gear shifted into Park.

- To activate AVH, shift into Drive to enable the vehicle to move normally, and then press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero).

AVH exits

- When AVH runs normally, the following actions deactivate AVH and shift the vehicle from Drive to Park:
  - Open the driver's door.
  - Unlock the driver's seat belt.
  - The gear status is in Drive when the vehicle stops, and EPB is enabled.
  - Press the AVH switch again to disable AVH when releasing the brake pedal.

AVH suppressed

- Shift into Reverse and then AVH enters the slow-moving condition. When the vehicle is reversing (in Reverse) or shifts from Reverse into Drive to travel at a low speed, AVH cannot be activated but stays on standby to facilitate low-speed vehicle motion.
- To exit slow-moving mode, press the AVH switch or drive at a speed above 6 mph (10 km/h). The AVH function is on standby and can be activated normally.

Driving Precautions

- Slow down when driving against strong winds to maintain better vehicle control.
- When driving on roads with kerbs, drive slowly and maintain an appropriate angle. To prevent tyre damage, do not drive over sharp-edged obstacles. Or it will severely damage the tyres.
- Slow down on bumpy or uneven roads. Otherwise, impacts may damage the tyres.
- Washing the vehicle or driving through deep water may wet the brakes. Check if they are wet by first ensuring the surrounding area is safe, then gently press the brake pedal. If you do not feel normal braking force, the brakes may be wet and need to be dried. With EPB engaged, drive carefully and lightly press the brake pedal to help dry the brakes.
- If the wheels are stuck, switch to the appropriate terrain mode (if equipped) to help free the vehicle. However, the vehicle may not be able to get unstuck under the following conditions: low battery level, all four wheels slipping, EV function limited, or ESC system malfunction.

WARNING

- The driver must ensure the safety of all occupants, guide them in the proper use of vehicle features, and prevent incorrect operation of controls such as window switches, especially by children.
- Make sure no occupant sticks their head or hands outside the window while driving, as this may result in accidents or serious injury. Pay extra attention when children are present.
- Be careful when accelerating, shifting gears, or braking on slippery roads. Sudden acceleration or braking may cause the vehicle to skid or deviate from its path.
- Do not leave the vehicle when the drive motor is running.

CAUTION

- Do not press and hold the Start/Stop button for more than 3 seconds while driving. Doing so will cut off power output and activate the emergency power-off function. Therefore, do not use this method to stop the vehicle unless absolutely necessary (for example, when normal stopping is impossible), as it may lead to a collision or serious injury.
  - If the emergency power-off function is activated, the vehicle will switch from "OK" mode to "ON" mode, lose power, and be unable to drive normally. Activate the hazard warning lights in this situation.
  - Emergency power-off during driving will not cause the steering and braking system to be out of control. However, power assistance will be lost, making steering and braking more difficult. Therefore, slow down as much as possible before activating emergency power-off, and pull over to a safe location whenever possible.
- Before driving, make sure that EPB is fully released and that the EPB indicator light is off.
- Under normal driving conditions, do not press the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time, otherwise the power output may be limited.
- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal unnecessarily, as this may cause overheating, wear, and unnecessary power consumption.
- Slow down when driving down steep slopes, and avoid braking too frequently to prevent disc overheating, which affects brake performance.
- Avoid driving through flooded areas as much as possible.
- Large amounts of water entering the engine compartment can cause damage to the engine power system or electrical components.

CAUTION

Winter Driving Precautions

- Make sure the coolant is freeze-proof.
  - Use the same type of coolant as the one used originally or choose the coolant according to the ambient temperature.
  - Improper coolant damages the cooling system.
- Check the condition of the low-voltage battery and the cables.
  - The low-voltage battery's capacity is lower in cold weather, so it must be fully charged when winter comes.
- Avoid door frost.
  - Spray some deicing agent or glycerin in the lock hole to prevent freezing.
- Use anti-freeze washer fluid.
  - These can be purchased at BYD authorised dealers or service providers and auto parts stores.
  - Choose water and anti-freeze ratio as specified by the manufacturer.

CAUTION

- Use cleaners specially for vehicle paint to prevent paint damage.

- Avoid ice and snow buildup under the fender liners.
  - Steering is difficult with ice or snow accumulating under the fenders. When driving in cold weather, stop from time to time and check for snow and ice under the fenders.
- BYD recommends carrying emergency tools for different road conditions.
  - It is advisable to keep snow chains, a window scraper, a bag of sand or salt, a flashing signal, a shovel, and connecting cables in the vehicle.

Winter Tyres

- Winter tyres provide better traction on snowy roads. The special rubber mixture and tread pattern makes the tyres less affected by low temperatures and delivers excellent braking performance to improve driving safety.

Usage tips

- It is recommended to use winter tyres in snow or ice conditions or at temperatures below 7°C. When temperatures rise to above 7°C, install summer or all-season tyres instead for driving safety and better performance.
- Winter tyres used must be the same size, load index, and speed rating as those originally provided by BYD.
- Winter tyres must have adequate tread depth. Tyres with a tread depth less than 0.16 in. (4 mm) do not perform well in winter conditions.
- Winter or summer tyres are designed for specific acceleration conditions. Use them in the corresponding seasons to avoid poor traction or braking performance.
- Do not exceed the speed rating of winter tyres, which is relatively low.
- After installing winter tyres, inflate them to the design pressures.

Snow Chain Instructions

- Snow chains are only for emergencies or areas where they are permitted by laws.
- Snow chains should be installed on front wheels. Be careful when driving the vehicle installed with snow chains on snow-covered roads. Some snow chains may damage the tyres, wheels, suspension, or vehicle body. It is recommended to use thin snow chains with a thickness or diameter no greater than 0.39 in. (10 mm) to ensure adequate clearance between the tyres and other components inside the wheel well.
- Read the component assembly drawings and other instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer carefully.
- Before purchasing and installing snow chains, consult a BYD authorised dealer or service provider where your vehicle was purchased.
- In order to minimise wear of tyres and snow chains, do not travel with snow chains on roads without snow.

REMINDER

- Driving speed must not exceed 19 mph (30 km/h) or the speed limit specified by the snow chain manufacturer.
- Drive carefully, and pay attention to bumps, potholes, and sharp turns that can cause the vehicle to bounce.
- For vehicles with snow chains, avoid sharp turns or braking with locked wheels, and slow down the

REMINDER

vehicle before entering a curve to avoid accidents due to loss of control.

- Install the chains symmetrically and remove them once you are on snowy or muddy roads.
- If abnormal noise is heard from the snow chain, it indicates that the chain may contact vehicle components such as suspension, body or brake lines. In this case, stop the vehicle immediately for inspection.
- When installing the snow chain, park the vehicle on a flat surface away from traffic, turn on the hazard warning lights, and place a warning triangle at the rear of the vehicle.
- Engage EPB before installing snow chains.
- Do not install snow chains when the tyre pressure is insufficient.
- When using snow chains, be careful not to damage the wheel rims.

Driver Assistance

Driver Assistance System

- The functions of the driver assistance system are divided into two categories: driving assist and safety assist.
  - Driving assist: It includes two functions with varying levels of intelligence: adaptive cruise control (ACC) and intelligent cruise control (ICC), designed to assist the driver in driving.
  - Safety assist: It includes front, side, and rear safety assistance to support the driver in safe driving.

WARNING

- Before using the driver assistance system, the driver should carefully read, understand, and comply with the relevant agreements and accompanying documents. The driver should fully understand the system-related information, including but not limited to: the user guide, general system limitations, descriptions of each function, applicable scenarios, operating methods, and precautions. Strict compliance with the operating instructions is required; otherwise, accidents, property damage, or personal injury may occur. Unless otherwise required by applicable laws and regulations, BYD assumes no liability for property damage, personal injury, or other consequences caused by the driver's non-compliance with this manual, relevant agreements, or accompanying documents.
- The system is designed to assist the driver, not to replace your judgement and operation. When using the system, the driver must comply with local traffic laws and regulations, always hold the steering wheel, keep alert and monitor the surrounding environment for potential hazards. Intervene or take control timely when necessary to ensure safe driving. Otherwise, it may result in accidents, property damage, or personal injury.

WARNING

- The terms and expressions related to vehicle control in this manual are intended to provide clear and concise instructions during system operation. During system operation, the driver remains the sole operator of the vehicle and must continuously monitor the vehicle status, system operation, surrounding environment, and relevant targets. In the event of system limitations or unexpected scenarios, immediate manual intervention and control are mandatory to ensure driving safety. Otherwise, accidents, property damage, or personal injury may occur.
- The driver shall use the driver assistance system in accordance with local laws and regulations, and shall not add functions, Apps, or tools to the system for any improper or illegal acts, nor shall they illegally collect and use personal information and geographic data through the system. BYD bear no responsibility for any illegal activities resulting from misuse, improper use, or unauthorised modification of the system functions or services. BYD reserves the right to temporarily disable system functions or even terminate services to the user. Additionally, BYD reserves the right to retain data related to the user's illegal activities for submission to authorised agencies in accordance with legal procedures.

CAUTION

- The driver assistance system is only designed to assist the driver in driving, not an automatic or unmanned driving system. The system is designed to assist the driver, not to replace your judgement and operation. Although the system can provide a certain level of assistance, it cannot fully address all scenarios that may arise due to traffic, road conditions, visibility, adverse weather, or other environmental changes during driving. Therefore, the driver remains fully responsible for all driving decisions and must ensure compliance with local traffic laws and regulations at all times.

Sensors of the Driver Assistance System

The vehicle is equipped with multiple sensors, including mmWave radars and cameras.

Sensor cleaning and maintenance

- Ensure that all radars and cameras are clean and the windscreen is clean and free from frost or fog. Dirt, obstructions, or attachments on the radar or camera surface, or dirt, frost, or fog on the windscreen may affect system performance.
- When a radar or camera is blocked or dirty, the instrument or infotainment touchscreen may display a message prompt. Clean the sensors as instructed. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider when necessary.
- Common radar or camera occlusion or dirty scenes and corresponding treatment suggestions:
  - If the radar or camera lens housing is covered with ice or frost, melt

it using warm water or a antifreeze-containing cleaning solution. Wipe the surface dry with a clean optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible residue remains.

- If dust, mud spots, bird droppings, or similar contaminants adhere to the radar or camera surface, rinse with running water or windscreen-specific cleaner until the dirt softens or detaches. Afterward, wipe the surface dry with a clean optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible residue remains.
- If moisture or condensation forms on the sensor surface, wipe it clean with a dry optical cloth, cotton cloth, or velvet cloth until no visible water stains remain.
- When driving in environments with poor lighting or obstructions, such as single-sided overpasses, tunnels, deserts, grasslands, or snowy areas, it is recommended to drive the vehicle away from the current environment so as to resolve the sensoring faults due to obstructions, with no further actions required.

- Cleaning and maintenance tips:
  - When the windscreen fogs or is likely to fog, activate the defogging function.
  - Using a neutral cleaning agent (such as soap water) to clean stains on the radar surface is recommended. After cleaning, rinse the radar housing with clean water and wipe it dry with a lint-free cloth.
  - Do not apply films, wax, non-OEM paint, vehicle wraps, or coatings to the radar area, as these may impair radar sensing performance.
  - Do not use a cleaning brush, as sand or debris may scratch the lens housing or casing.
  - Do not use hot water to remove ice or snow from the lens housing, as it may cause cracking.
  - Do not wipe the lens housing forcefully to avoid damaging the optical coating.
  - Do not use metal or hard objects to scrape the contaminants, ice, or snow on the lens housing and casing to avoid damage.
  - Avoid spraying radars or cameras directly with high-pressure water.
  - The mmWave radars are installed in the front and rear bumpers. Keep the bumpers clean and do not repaint, add body kits, or install metal or alloy accessories (including electroplated accessories), which may affect radar performance.

Sensor limitations

- Limitations of radar and camera include but are not limited to:
  - Radars and cameras may have detection blind spots.
  - Radars and cameras may detect falsely such as misjudge distance or speed, or detect objects that are not present.
  - Radars and cameras may miss a target, such as partially or completely failing to identify vehicles, pedestrians, animals, or other obstacles.
- Many factors can affect sensor performance, leading to false or missed detection. Carefully read General Limitations of the Driver Assistance System.

WARNING

- It is strictly prohibited to use strong alkali, strong acid,

WARNING

ammonia-containing cleaning solvent, bleaching agent, cement cleaner, asphalt cleaning agent, glue remover, polishing agent or paint remover to clean radar and camera lens housings and casings.

- Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider if a radar or camera needs to be replaced. Do not install parts not approved by BYD or make unapproved modifications.
- If the windscreen, fender, side mirror, bumper, or boot lid need to be replaced, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider to properly handle radars and cameras.
- If the area where a sensor is installed is damaged or impacted, causing misalignment or damage, the system may not operate properly. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider to have it inspected promptly.
- After radar or camera replacement, calibrate as instructed in this manual in a timely manner. An unsuccessful calibration may affect the proper operation of the system.
- Failure to observe this precaution could impair driving safety, resulting in an accident and even property loss or personal injuries.

General Limitations of the Driver Assistance System

Driver assistance features employee multi-sensor fusion algorithm. Various factors can impair their performance. These include but are not limited to device issues (including incorrect operations), environment of use (such as weather and road conditions), and influence of vehicles around and other road users. In specific:

Device issues (including user-related reasons)

- The mmWave radars or cameras are not calibrated, are damaged, or covered by objects such as ice, water, frost, mud, or dust.
- There are strongly reflective objects around, such as highway traffic signs, metal guardrails, and water reflection on the road.
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for professional calibration and checkup of the system in any of the following situations:
  - The front camera or windscreen has been removed.
  - Wheel alignment has been carried out.
  - Scrapes, collisions, or other impacts have led to sensor or vehicle structural error, especially sensor displacement due to deformation or damage of the bumper, windscreen, side mirrors, body panels (for example, fenders and boot lid), frame, or other components.
- Trailer hitches or loaded objects protrude from the vehicle.
- Interference or obstruction is caused by non-standard accessories installed at the rear such as bike racks.
- Obstructions is caused by excessive paint (increased paint thickness) or adhesive products (such as tape, stickers, or car covers).

- Do not use steering wheel cover on vehicles equipped with capacitive sensors as it may cause malfunctions.
- Cases where system performance may be reduced include but are not limited to:
  - The brake pads are excessively worn or the braking system malfunctions.
  - Tyres are improperly inflated or worn out.
  - Unqualified tyres are installed.
  - Snow chains are installed.
  - A small spare tyre or tyre repair kit is used.
  - The vehicle is heavily loaded.

Environment of use

- Radars may have a transient failure from detection limitations if the vehicle runs in circular ramps or tunnels or under other special conditions for an extended period. The function will be recovered after the vehicle is away from such conditions.
- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection, causing the vehicle to brake late or fail to decelerate as expected.
- On roads with sharp curves (winding roads, for example) or too curvy roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of sensor detection for seconds, so ACC may accelerate.
- The system may not be able to correctly identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic, toll booths, motorcycles, bicycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires constant attention on the surroundings.
- The system cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as snow mode.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, e-bicycle, or motorcycle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
- The vehicle is running under extreme weather, such as rain, snow, fog, and smog, or on a icy and slippery curve.
- Visibility is poor due to heavy smoke, splashing water, dust, or exhaust emissions from nearby vehicles.
- Lane lines are excessively worn, blocked, or covered, have disappeared, are overlapping old ones, have been adjusted in road constructions or change rapidly.
- The vehicle is in intense light (for example, oncoming headlights or direct sunlight) or low-light conditions (for example, dawn, dusk, or nighttime).
- The vehicle experiences extreme lighting contrast, for example, at the tunnel entrance or exit.
- The environment is extremely hot or cold.
- Weight or width limit signs not in standard size as per national regulations may be mistaken for speed limit signs.
- Unclear, distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked, or covered speed limit signs may not be recognised correctly.
- The vehicle is in complex road conditions, such as steep slopes, sharp curves, continuous curves, narrow winding roads, narrow lanes, off-road roads, rough roads, roads with grooves or potholes (e.g., manholes), roads with a drop-off or cliff on one side, raised road shoulders, excessively wide

lanes, construction zones (e.g., areas with traffic cones), or areas involving on-ramps, off-ramps, intersections, or toll gates.

- The vehicle is in poor road conditions, such as slippery or soft surfaces (such as water accumulation, ice, snow accumulation, muddy roads, gravel roads, or sandy roads), blurred lane markings, or damaged road signs.

Vehicles around and other road users

- Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
- Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
- There are close-proximity non-motorised vehicles (including but not limited to two-wheelers, three-wheelers, bicycles, motorcycles, trolleys, strollers, and shopping carts), animals, or pedestrians (especially children).
- There are stationary vehicles, upturned vehicles, or irregularly shaped vehicles, such as engineering vehicles, flatbed trucks, road maintenance vehicles, and vehicles carrying reinforced concrete pipes or other external cargo.
- Irregularly shaped obstacles nearby, such as transparent stools, chairs, tables, traffic barriers, and traffic cones, and other obstacles are difficult for the system to identify.
- Vehicles have large areas of monotonous background colours.
- Complex traffics, including vehicles, pedestrians, cyclists, animals, or other obstacles appearing suddenly and approaching rapidly, as well as settings such as on-ramps, off-ramps, intersections, or toll stations.

WARNING

- If the sensors are displaced or damaged after scrapes or collisions (including minor impacts), do not use driver assistance features. Instead, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection.
- For safety, do not use driver assistance features in bad weather or in poor lighting conditions.
- For safety, do not deliberately test driver assistance features, for example, waiting for system reaction to emergencies without manual intervention.
- Read carefully all instructions to avoid feature deactivation or danger incurred by incorrect operations. For example, the acceleration request overrides emergency braking if the accelerator paddle is depressed with AEB on.
- Because of its limitations, the driver assistance system may give improper warnings or intervention while monitoring the surroundings. It may also raise false alarms as a result of operation misinterpretation. Stay alert.
- Due to system limitations, the system may not accurately detect or respond to sudden changes in the surroundings. The driver must stay alert and intervene or take control of the vehicle when necessary (for example, by decelerating, braking, or steering). Failure to observe precautions above could result in accidents or personal injuries.

Driving Assist

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

- The adaptive cruise control (ACC) system, an extension of the traditional cruise control, uses sensors on a front mmWave radar or front camera to detect the relative distance and speed of the vehicle ahead, so as to maintain the set cruise speed or time-base following distance. When there are no vehicles ahead, the vehicle maintains the set target cruise speed. If a vehicle is detected ahead, ACC adjusts the vehicle speed according to the set following distance.

CAUTION

- ACC is enabled by default and cannot be manually disabled. The driver can activate ACC using the buttons on the steering wheel. See "ACC Activation Methods" for details.

CAUTION

- ACC only serves to assist in cruise control. The driver must remain actively engaged with steering to ensure correct vehicle direction.

ACC status

- ACC on: If the ACC activation conditions are met, the driver can activate ACC using the steering wheel button. If conditions are not met and the driver attempts to activate ACC, the instrument cluster will display a "Function Unavailable" message.
- ACC activated: The system can maintain the set cruise speed or automatically adjust the distance to the vehicle ahead. Pressing the accelerator pedal temporarily overrides ACC control, which will resume once the pedal is released.
- If ACC fails: ACC is not available. If the driver attempts activation, the instrument cluster will display a "Function Unavailable" message.

Function Status	Indicator	Display Status	Definition
ACC on		Indicator on	ACC has been turned on but not activated yet in the current power cycle.
ACC on		Indicator on	ACC has been turned on, can be activated, and had already been activated in the current power cycle. The last set cruise speed is displayed in the indicator icon.
ACC activated		Indicator on	ACC has been activated. The cruise speed set is displayed in the indicator icon.
Unable to be activated/faulty		Indicator on	ACC is not available because it cannot be activated or is faulty.

Activation conditions

- EPB is not engaged.

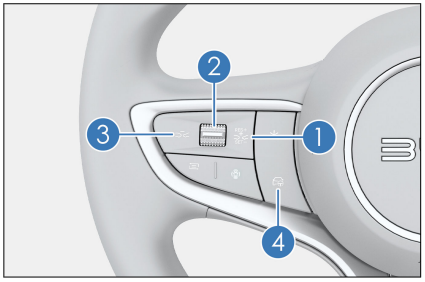
- The vehicle is in Drive.
- The vehicle does not slide backwards.
- The boot, bonnet, and all doors are closed.
- The driver seat belt is fastened.
- The electronic stability control (ESC) system is activated.
- The vehicle speed is not greater than 93 mph (150 km/h).
- If the vehicle is stationary (zero speed) and the brake pedal is pressed or AVH is engaged, ACC can be activated.
- If the vehicle is moving (speed greater than 0) and the brake pedal is not pressed, ACC can be activated.
- The AEB function is not activated.

CAUTION

- ACC is suitable for highways and well-maintained roads, rather than complex urban or mountain roads.

Activation methods

- During the current power cycle, the first activation of ACC can be done using button ④. If ACC has been activated in a current power cycle, pushing rocker switch ② up can also activate ACC.



- When activating the function via button ④, the system sets the current speed as the target cruise speed (if the current speed is below 18 mph (30 km/h), it will be set to 18 mph (30 km/h). When activating via rocker switch ②, the target cruise speed is set to the last value before exiting the function.

WARNING

- ACC cannot automatically adjust speed based on road or traffic conditions. To ensure safe driving, the driver must set and adjust the target speed according to local regulations and road conditions.

Setting the target cruise speed

- When ACC is activated, you can set the target cruise speed between 19–93 mph (30–150 km/h) by moving rocker switch ② up or down. You can customise the speed adjustment setting on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist** → **Speed Adjustment Mode**, and select between "Short press ±5 / Long press ±1" or "Short press ±1 / Long press ±5".
  - When the speed adjustment setting is "Short press ±5 / Long press ±1", briefly pushing rocker switch ② up/down increases/decreases the target cruise speed by 3 mph (5 km/h) each time, whereas holding it up/down increases/decreases the speed by 1 mph (1 km/h) successively.
  - When the speed adjustment setting is "Short press ±1 / Long press ±5", briefly pushing rocker switch ② up/down increases/decreases the target cruise speed by 1 mph (1 km/h) each time, whereas holding it up/down increases/decreases the speed by 3 mph (5 km/h) successively.

WARNING

- ACC may not immediately slow down the vehicle to the desired speed. Do not over-rely on ACC to reduce the speed.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to follow these requirements may impair driving safety, resulting in accidents, property damage, or personal injury.

Setting time-based following distance

- Press ① and ③ to increase and decrease the time-based following distance. At each setting level, the faster the speed, the longer the distance to the vehicle ahead.
- ACC increases or decreases the time-based following distance from level 1 to 4 in sequence, and the default setting is level 3.

Cruise control

- When no front vehicle obstructing your vehicle travel is detected, ACC helps maintain the set speed.

Following

- When a front vehicle obstructing your vehicle travel is detected, ACC helps maintain a safe distance to follow and speed up, slow down, brake, and start the vehicle accordingly.
- On the instrument cluster, the followed vehicle ahead is highlighted in blue. The following distance is fixed but varies with vehicle speed and the chosen following distance level. See "Setting following distance".
- When active, ACC helps adjust the following speed and target when the target cuts out or another vehicle cuts in and switches to cruise control (without distance control) if no new following target appears.

Follow-to-stop/start

- Under normal driving conditions, ACC enables the vehicle to follow the vehicle ahead to start or stop:
  - If the vehicle ahead stops for a short time, ACC resumes following automatically when the lead vehicle starts moving.
  - If the vehicle ahead stops for a long time, depress the accelerator pedal or move rocker switch ② upward to start the vehicle.
  - ACC will be cancelled and EPB engaged after the ACC system holds your vehicle at a standstill for too long. In that case, you will have to release EPB and depress the brake pedal to reactivate ACC.

ACC acceleration

- ACC acceleration depends on the current driving mode:
  - In Sport mode, acceleration is faster.
  - In Normal mode, acceleration is moderate.
  - In Eco mode, acceleration is gentle.

WARNING

- Be a safe and responsible driver. Set the target speed and time-based following distance according to local regulations and conditions and adjust in a timely manner to changes.
- ACC is unable to deal with oncoming traffic.

WARNING

- ACC may not identify very close vehicles or pedestrian.
- On curves, the vehicle may follow a wrong target, leading to unintended travelling speed or direction. You must stay focus and take control of the vehicle in a timely and correct manner whenever noticing such situations.
- To prevent collisions, never be over-reliant on ACC adjustment of speed and following distance to keep a correct and safe distance from the front vehicle. The driver is responsible for determining and maintaining a safe following distance.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to follow these requirements may impair driving safety, resulting in accidents, property damage, or personal injury.

Manual acceleration with ACC active

- Enable or disable this function in the infotainment touchscreen→ ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist** → **Adjust Cruise Speed by Accelerator** and the function is off by default.
- You can accelerate manually by pressing the accelerator pedal, which overrides ACC braking.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal increases current speed rapidly, and releasing the pedal raises the target cruise speed.
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed until the real-time vehicle speed exceeds the target cruise speed, the target cruise speed will be reset to the real-time speed when the pedal is released.
  - If the target cruise speed is greater than 50 mph (80 km/h), the cruise speed setting is not updated when the accelerator pedal is released after acceleration.
  - If the target cruising speed is less than 50 mph (80 km/h) and the real-time speed after acceleration is greater than 50 mph (80 km/h), set the cruising speed to 50 mph (80 km/h) when the accelerator pedal is released.
  - If the target cruising speed is less than 50 mph (80 km/h) and the real-time speed after acceleration is less than 50 mph (80 km/h), set the cruising speed to the current real-time speed when the accelerator pedal is released.
- If the rocker switch ② is pulled down while accelerating, the current speed will be reset as the target cruise speed.

Exiting ACC

- When ICC is disabled on the infotainment touchscreen, ACC can be deactivated by pressing button ④ or the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving. When the vehicle is stationary, ACC can only be deactivated by pressing button ④.
- When ICC is enabled on the infotainment touchscreen, ACC can be deactivated by pressing the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving.

Inside overtaking prevention (also applicable to ICC)*

- The function of inside overtaking prevention in the slow lane is only effective when ACC is enabled and the

vehicle speed is above 55 mph (90 km/h).

- Enable or disable this function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist** → **Inside Overtaking Prevention** and the function is off by default.
- After being switched on, this feature slows the vehicle down to prevent overtaking if it is on a slow lane but faster than the vehicle on the adjacent fast lane.

Speed adjustment on curve (also applicable to ICC)

- This feature works only with ACC active.
- Enable or disable this function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist** → **Speed Adjustment on Curve** and the function is off by default.
- With this feature switched on and ACC active, the vehicle decelerates as appropriate for the curvature before entering a curve for driving safety and comfort.

System limitations

- Exterior ACC sensors
  - The front mmWave radars and cameras are installed at the front of the vehicle. Blockage of their detection area can compromise system performance. In particular, if the sensor is covered completely, ACC exits and informs the driver on the instrument cluster. System function will recover after blockage is removed and the vehicle is restarted or runs on normal roads for a while.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, e-bicycle, or motorcycle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
  - The front mmWave radar may have a transient failure from detection limitations if the vehicle runs in circular ramps or tunnels or under other special conditions for an extended period. The function will be recovered after the vehicle is away from such conditions.
  - The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Metal objects, such as rail or metal plates used in road construction, may interfere with front mmWave radars, making it malfunction.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed by noises or electromagnetic waves.
  - If performance of front mmWave radar sensors and cameras is affected by vibration or collision, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection, causing the ACC vehicle to brake late or fail to decelerate as expected.
- On roads with sharp curves, such as winding roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of ACC sensor detection for seconds, so ACC may accelerate.

WARNING

- ACC cannot deal with sharp, consecutive, and other complex curves, so you need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary.

- Traffic flow and surroundings must be heeded for setting and adjusting the following distance. Even with ACC properly set, it remains essential to ensure the vehicle can be brought to a full stop at any time.
- The ACC system may not be able to correctly identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic, toll booths, bicycles, motorcycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires constant attention on the surroundings.
- The ACC system is capable of limited braking instead of emergency braking.

WARNING

- ACC is not a collision warning or avoidance system and therefore cannot replace collision prevention warning, collision prevention brake, or other active safety assist features, which we strongly advise you to keep switched on (see "Safety Assist" for details).
- ACC cannot react to poles, bollards, and other obstacles, so you need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary.
- Never be over-reliant on ACC for full deceleration and collision prevention. You need to stay aware of road conditions ahead and brake in a timely manner if necessary.
- The vehicle may not be able to detour around front targets that risk colliding with it, especially when the target is stationary or when the vehicle speed is too high.

WARNING

- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to follow these requirements may impair driving safety, resulting in accidents, property damage, or personal injury.

- ACC cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as snow mode.
- ACC and its related features may operate improperly or deactivate in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Vehicle issues (including but not limited to improper operations):
    - Vehicle speed is greater than 97 mph (155 km/h).
    - Any door, the bonnet, or the boot lid is open or faulty.
    - Tyre pressure is abnormal.
    - Airbags are abnormal.
    - The vehicle is in any of the following states: not in Drive, in the process of braking, hill descent system/hill hold system/ traction control system activated, colliding with or being collided by another vehicle, ignition off.
    - The vehicle's chassis, braking system, traction control system, or electronic stability system malfunctions or is in need of servicing.
    - The driver's seat belt is not fastened.

- The driver assistance system malfunctions or is in need of servicing.

- Environment factors (including but not limited to weather, visibility, road conditions):
  - Low visibility settings such as nighttime, rainy, snowy, or foggy days, dusty environments, lack of lighting, low-light conditions, backlighting, and glare
  - Road openings, intersections, narrow roads, and steep slopes
  - Mountain roads and rural roads
  - Waterlogged, icy, and snow-covered sections
  - Sharp curves, serpentine curves, switchback roads, and other high-curvature turns
  - Unpaved roads such as muddy roads, gravel roads, and off-road trails
  - Presence of kurbs and other low-profile, static, or nearby obstacles
- Vehicles around and other road users (including but not limited to):
  - Congested intersections
  - Pedestrians and vehicles weaving through the intersection
  - Sudden appearance of pedestrians, cyclists, and animals previously in the blind spot
  - Sudden braking of the vehicle ahead
  - Adjacent large vehicle merging into the vehicle's lane
  - Pedestrians or other vehicles cutting in line, jaywalking or road-hogging, merging in from a sharp angle, or traveling in the wrong way
  - Stationary vehicles, upturned vehicles, and vehicles with irregular shapes, such as flatbed trucks, engineering vehicles, road maintenance vehicles, and vehicles carrying reinforced concrete pipes or other external cargo
  - Front vehicle or adjacent front vehicle with any door open or things falling off
- Other issues
  - Other issues include but are not limited to: situations listed under General System Limitations.

WARNING

- ACC is only a driver assistance feature, and cautions here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety and must always mind surrounding traffic.
- Use ACC based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- ACC cannot be activated with ESC off.
- ACC is suitable for highways and well-maintained roads, rather than complex urban or mountain roads.
- It is the driver's responsibility to keep distance from the vehicle ahead. Set a time-based following distance compliant with the minimum requirement for the local driving environment.

CAUTION

- Pressing the accelerator or brake pedal while ACC is active allows you to take over the vehicle. Therefore, take caution to keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.
- ACC may have no or slow responses to a vehicle ahead that stops suddenly, resulting in a risk of late braking.
- In some cases, such as when the preceding vehicle is moving too slowly, when your vehicle changes lanes too quickly, or when the distance from the preceding vehicle is too short, the system may not have sufficient time to reduce the speed or issue timely warnings. In such cases, the driver must respond appropriately and promptly.
- When active with the vehicle motionless, ACC identifies any stationary obstacle ahead as the target and keeps the vehicle still to ensure a safe startup and prevent collision. However, this function does not cover all obstacles, so the driver must be alert.
- If a vehicle in an adjacent lane is too close to your lane, the ACC system, when activated, may respond and apply the brakes.
- Vehicles coming into your ACC vehicle's route and within its camera detection range will be identified and reacted to as targets, which may lead to hard or late braking.
- Keep control of the vehicle if ACC cannot target the vehicle ahead (no highlighted target on the instrument cluster).

CAUTION

- When the vehicle stops as it follows a vehicle ahead, in rare cases, the system does not recognise the end of the vehicle ahead (for example, the rear axle of a truck with a high chassis or a rear bumper). This means a suitable following distance cannot be kept and you must stay alert and ready to brake at any time.
- Modifying the vehicle structure, such as lowering the chassis, may affect the ACC system.
- Do not use ACC when visibility is poor, or when driving on slopes, winding roads, or wet roads (covered in ice/snow or flooded).
- Because speed limit recognition could be misled by road conditions, always monitor the speed limit of the current road to ensure compliance with traffic laws.
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for professional calibration and checkup of the front camera in any of the following situations:
  - The front camera or the windscreen has been removed.
  - Wheel alignment has been carried out.
  - The vehicle has experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or the instrument cluster has prompted an system error.

Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)*

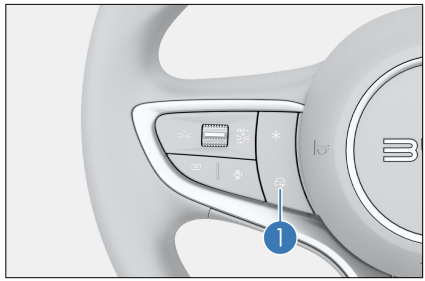
- Intelligent cruise control (ICC) assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the current lane at speeds between 0 and 80 mph (0–130 km/h). It is primarily intended for use on roads with clear lane markings and in good driving conditions. When using ICC, the driver must control the driving route, keep both hands on the steering wheel, and be ready to take manual control whenever necessary.
- ICC uses sensors such as radars and cameras to monitor the road ahead. Based on the detected environment, it assists the driver in controlling the steering and speed, building upon ACC functionality to keep the vehicle in its current lane.
- ICC only assists in keeping the vehicle within the current lane; it does not provide route guidance. When using ICC, you must be prepared to take immediate corrective actions to ensure safe driving. Always keep both hands on the steering wheel, take control when route adjustments are required, and pay attention to instrument cluster and audio alerts. If the driver's hands remain off the steering wheel for a certain time, a driver disengagement alert will be triggered.

ICC indicators

Indicator	Display status	Definition
	Indicator on	ICC available but not activated
	Indicator on	ICC activated and operating
	Indicator on	ICC unavailable due to fault

Activating ICC

- ICC is available for activation when  displays on the instrument cluster.
  - Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping  → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist**. When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- Press button ① to activate ICC. If the activation conditions are not met (for example, no lane markings are detected), ACC will be activated first. Once the conditions are met, ICC will switch on automatically.



-  displays on the instrument cluster when ICC is successfully activated. The target speed will be shown in .

Cruise control

- ICC assists the driver in keeping the vehicle centred in the lane, while supporting all ACC functions such as constant-speed cruise, following, and the adjustment of target speed and time-based following distance.

WARNING

- Be a safe and responsible driver. Set the target speed and time-based following distance according to local regulations and conditions and adjust in a timely manner to changes.
- ICC cannot detect all potential hazards, so the driver must stay aware of road conditions ahead and slow down or brake in a timely manner if necessary. Always keep both hands on the steering wheel and remain aware of the surroundings, ready to take prompt control of the vehicle and take corrective measures.
- Do not over-rely on ICC to keep the vehicle in the lane. In situations such as curves, the vehicle may drift towards or across lane markings. The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct lane position.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary.

Exiting ICC

- Press the button ① or brake pedal to exit if the vehicle is moving.
- Press the button ① to exit if the vehicle is stationary.

Driver disengagement alert*

- If the driver's hands are removed from the steering wheel for a certain time, a driver disengagement alert will be triggered.
- After the third-level disengagement alert is triggered, the vehicle will automatically exit ICC, decelerate to a stop within the lane, and activate the hazard warning lights.
- The following actions can interrupt the automatic stop:
  - Turning off the hazard lights or activating a turn signal
  - Pressing the accelerator pedal while turning the steering wheel
  - Cancelling ICC using the steering wheel control button
  - Shifting to Park
- If the third-level disengagement alert is triggered three times within the same power cycle, ICC will be disabled. The function can be reactivated only after the vehicle is turned off and back on again.

WARNING

- The vehicle may not stabilise immediately upon ICC activation. The driver must keep both hands on the steering wheel, stay aware of driving conditions, and be ready to take control at any time.
- Ensure surrounding conditions are safe before activating ICC. Avoid over-reliance on the system.
- Always remain alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary.
- ICC can be affected by weather conditions, lighting, and lane marking visibility. Performance degrades significantly in backlight, glare, strong light, on

WARNING

snow-covered roads or roads with heavily worn lane markings.

- Do not use the ICC on winding roads, icy or slippery curves, or under poor weather conditions such as dense fog, heavy rain, or snow, which may obstruct the forward camera's view.
- Speed limit recognition could be misled by map updates, vehicle connectivity, and road conditions. The driver must always observe current road speed limits to ensure complies with traffic regulations.

CAUTION

- Activate ICC only after the vehicle is stable (steering wheel centred, vehicle aligned and centred in lane, and no sharp turns).
- ICC activation may fail at intersections. Try activating ICC after passing the intersection and entering a stable lane.

Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)

Function overview

- When the traffic sign recognition (TSR) system detects that the speed limit is inconsistent with the adaptive cruise control (ACC) target cruise speed, you are required to confirm whether to cruise at the speed limit. Press the SET- or RES + button on the steering wheel to adjust the target cruise speed to the speed limit value.
- When the system detects traffic signs such as roundabouts or intersections, it will prompt the driver whether to adjust the ACC target cruise speed accordingly.
- If the speed limit forecast function is active and the upcoming speed limit differs from the current ACC target cruise speed, the system will prompt the driver to adjust the target cruise speed according to the upcoming speed limit. Pressing the SET− or RES+ button will adjust the target cruise speed to the upcoming speed limit.
- The system's operating speed range is 19-93 mph (30-150 km/h).

Settings

- ISLC setting: infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
  - This function is disabled by factory default.
  - When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
  - When TSR is disabled, ISLC also ceases to function.
  - With TSR on, ISLC can be enabled or disabled depending on your needs.

CAUTION

- ISLC integrates ACC and TSR. Therefore, the precautions of ACC and TSR must be followed when using ISLC.

Forward Safety Assist

Forward Collision Warning (FCW)

- Forward collision warning (FCW) uses the front mmWave radar or cameras to detect vehicles, pedestrians, and cyclists in front. When detecting a risk of collision, the system alerts audibly

and visually to reduce or avoid the risk of collision.

Function overview

- Safe distance warning:
  - At 41–93 mph (65–150 km/h), the system monitors the environment ahead in real-time. The safe distance warning is triggered if a short following distance is detected to have been kept for a long time.
  - The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, and a message is displayed to alert the driver.
- Pre-warning:
  - At 10–93mph (15–150 km/h), pre-warning is given in response to a risk of collision with the target ahead. In that case, immediately take appropriate actions to ensure a safe following distance.
  - The system gives a pre-warning visually and audibly. The indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, the buzzer alarms, and a textual prompt is displayed to suggest the driver braking.
- Emergency warning:
  - If the vehicle runs at about 10-93mph (15-150 km/h), if the driver does not respond appropriately after the pre-warning and the collision risk increases, the system issues an emergency warning. In that case, immediately take appropriate actions to ensure a safe following distance.
  - This emergency warning is given in the form of an indicator and a textual braking prompt on the instrument cluster, a beep, and a brief braking reminder.

WARNING

- FCW is an assistance feature and its warning timing may be affected by many factors, including vehicle speed, sensor accuracy, target type, distance to the target, and system latency. As a result, warnings may be delayed, missed, or triggered falsely. FCW can not replace your judgement and operation.

Settings

- You can set the FCW function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The settings are defined as follows:
  - OFF: disables FCW.
  - Late: allows FCW to issue later-timed warnings.
  - Moderate: allows FCW to issue moderate-timed warnings.
  - Early: allows FCW to issue early-timed warnings.

REMINDER

- The factory default setting is moderate.

System limitations

- FCW may be affected or give no response in the following cases, including but not limited to:
  - Oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that cut obliquely into the your path
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in adjacent lanes
  - Animals

- Non-standard vehicles, such as water trucks, box trucks, and construction vehicles

- FCW may be affected or give no response in the following cases, including but not limited to:
  - The vehicle runs under poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - The vehicle runs under poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, glare, or direct sunlight.
  - Sensors are dirty, hazy, damaged, or blocked.
  - The bonnet or the boot is not completely closed or is opened while driving.
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened or it is unfastened when the vehicle is in motion.
  - The driver presses the brake pedal.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - The drivers frequently switches between the accelerator and brake pedals.
  - ESC is disabled or the ESC fault indicator is on.
  - Vehicle modifications (such as thick repainting, films, tape, or decorative items) impair camera or mmWave radar performance.
  - The system is starting up, for example when the vehicle has just been powered on or is restarting.
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- In complex traffic situations, FCW may not be able to respond correctly to the following situations, including but not limited to:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians obscured by other objects.
  - Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
  - Pedestrians are not detected due to special clothing or occlusion.
  - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, e-bicycle, motorcycle, or an unusually shaped vehicle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
  - The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed by noises or electromagnetic waves.
- FCW may trigger unnecessary warning for water stains on the ground, road shadows, manhole covers, iron plates, or road signs.
- The front mmWave radars may experience temporary malfunctions from detection limitations if the vehicle is driven for an extended period under special road conditions such as circular parking garages or tunnels. The function will resume once the vehicle leaves such conditions.

WARNING

- Always drive safely and remain alert to surrounding traffic. FCW is not a replacement for your judgement and vehicle control under any circumstances. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- If FCW gives an alarm, brake based on traffic conditions to slow down or steer away from obstacles.
- If the vehicle travels too close to the vehicle ahead for too long, a safety distance warning will be given. If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly, a collision may be unavoidable.
- As the pedestrian protection function is limited by certain physical conditions, you must take timely and effective control of the vehicle under dangerous conditions. FCW may not issue warnings due to limitations in certain pedestrian protection scenarios.
- The system cannot completely protect pedestrians or avoid accidents.
- The pedestrian protection function may occasionally trigger unnecessary warnings in complex situations such as curves.
- System failure, which may be caused by misalignment of the front mmWave radars or cameras, may trigger wrong warnings.
- Do not try to test FCW with carton, iron plate, dummy and other objects. The system may not work properly and thus result in accidents.

WARNING

- Make sure to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the mmWave radars* and cameras in any of the following situations:
  - The mmWave radar or front camera has been removed.
  - Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
  - The vehicle has experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.
- Use FCW based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

REMINDER

- FCW cannot issue warnings under all circumstances. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles, pedestrians, and cyclists.
- Contamination or obstruction may cause radar and front camera sensor blindness. When a message indicating so appear on the instrument cluster, clean the sensor surface. FCW is disabled while the sensor is dirty or covered and will resume after clearing.

Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)

- The automatic emergency braking (AEB) system uses the front mmWave radar or the camera to detect vehicles, pedestrians, and cyclists ahead. The system is triggered to help avoid collision or reduce the

impact if possible serious collisions are detected.

- At about 3–93 mph (4–150 km/h), the AEB system monitors the road ahead in real time and automatically applies braking if a collision risk with a vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclists is detected.
- During emergency braking, the instrument cluster displays a braking indicator and a prompt message "Emergency braking", and an audible alarm is triggered simultaneously.

WARNING

- AEB is a driver assistance feature not designed to prevent collisions but rather to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking efficiency, and tyre status. It may also be mistakenly triggered by misidentification. AEB can not replace your judgement and operation.

Settings

- Enable or disable AEB on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

WARNING

- Disabling AEB is strongly discouraged, because this would prevent system assistance in reducing vehicle speed and avoiding/mitigating collisions.

REMINDER

- The function is enabled by factory default.

System Limitations

- AEB is only activated when the vehicle speed exceeds 3 mph (4 km/h). This feature is designed to reduce the risk of collision but does not guarantee collision avoidance at all speeds. Always drive with caution.
- Targets that may not be responded to include, but are not limited to:
  - Oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists that cut obliquely into the vehicle's path
  - Vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in adjacent lanes
  - Animals
  - Non-standard vehicles, such as water trucks, box trucks, and construction vehicles
- AEB may be affected or inoperative under the following conditions, including but not limited to:
  - The vehicle is operating in poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - The vehicle is operating in poor visibility conditions such as nighttime, glare, or direct sunlight.
  - The road conditions are poor due to pits, bumps, slippery surfaces, or steep slopes.
  - Sensors are dirty, hazy, damaged, or blocked.
  - The bonnet or boot is not closed properly or opened during driving.
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened.

- The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
- The drivers frequently switches between the accelerator and brake pedals.
- ESC off or ESC fault indicator on
- Vehicle modifications (such as thick repainting, films, tape, decorative items) impair camera or mmWave radar performance.
- The system is starting up, for example when the vehicle has just been powered on or is restarting.
- Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
- The system malfunctions or requires servicing.

- AEB may be unable to properly respond to complex traffic, including but not limited to the following circumstances:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
  - Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
  - Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
  - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, e-bicycle, motorcycle, or an unusually shaped vehicle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
  - The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed by noises or electromagnetic waves.
- Causes that may hinder optimal system performance include but are not limited to:
  - The front bumper is strongly impacted from accidents or other causes.
  - The brake pads are excessively worn or the braking system malfunctions.
  - Tyres are improperly inflated or worn out.
  - Unqualified tyres are installed.
  - Snow chains are installed.
  - A small spare tyre or tyre repair kit is used.
  - The vehicle is heavily loaded.
  - The vehicle is in the break-in period.
- AEB may trigger unnecessary braking for puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- The front mmWave radars may experience temporary malfunctions from detection limitations if the vehicle is driven for an extended period under special road conditions such as circular parking garages or tunnels. The function will resume once the vehicle leaves such conditions.
- AEB cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as towing and snow mode.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, AEB will not be triggered

again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- Always drive safely and remain alert to surrounding traffic. AEB is not a replacement for your judgement and vehicle control under any circumstances.
- As the pedestrian protection function is limited by certain physical conditions, you must take timely and effective control of the vehicle under dangerous conditions. AEB may not brake due to limitations in certain pedestrian protection scenarios.
- The system cannot completely protect pedestrians or avoid accidents.
- The pedestrian protection function may occasionally trigger unnecessary braking in complex situations such as curves.
- System failure, which may be caused by misalignment of the front mmWave radars or cameras, may trigger unnecessary braking.
- Do not attempt to test AEB with cartons, metal plates, dummies, or other objects, as the system may not function properly and thus causing accidents.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the mmWave radars in case of any of the following situations:
  - The mmWave radar or front camera has been removed.

WARNING

  - Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
  - The vehicle has experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.
- Use AEB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

REMINDER

- During an emergency warning, the system will not activate AEB if the driver has already taken evasive action, such as steering, accelerating, or braking firmly.
- AEB cannot guarantee a braking in all cases. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles, pedestrians or cyclists.
- Contamination or obstruction may cause radar and front camera sensor blindness. When a message indicating so appear on the instrument cluster, clean the sensor surface. When the sensor is dirty or covered, AEB is disabled. After clearing, it resumes normal operation.

Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA)*

- When the vehicle is travelling at around 6–12 mph (10–20 km/h), the front cross traffic alert (FCTA) system continuously monitor the environment ahead through sensors such as mmWave radars or cameras. If a potential collision with a crossing vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist is

detected, the system issues a warning to alert the driver.

- During a warning event, the system alerts the driver through an audible beep from the buzzer, radar-side rendering on the instrument cluster, flashing of the instrument cluster indicators and front-row ambient lights, and flashing warning lights on the side mirrors.

Settings

- Enable or disable FCTA on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- This function is enabled by factory default.
- The system is enabled by default when the vehicle is started.

System Limitations

- FCTA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Visibility is poor due to nighttime, rain, snow, or other extreme weather.
  - The function is disabled.
  - The vehicle is not in Drive.
  - The bonnet, the door or the boot is not completely closed or is opened while driving.
  - The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
  - The steering wheel is turned sharply or rapidly.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - The driver presses and releases the brake pedal.
  - System initialisation is in progress.
  - The system is starting up during vehicle power-on or reboot.
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- In the following situations (including but not limited to the scenarios listed below), the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as front obstructions, obstacle type, or appearance timing, which may result in no warning, a false warning, or a delayed warning.
  - When a target vehicle is approaching from the side at a high speed, the system may not issue warnings as appropriate.
  - MmWave radars are dirty, hazy, damaged, or blocked.
  - Detection may be affected by noise or electromagnetic interference, leading to delays or malfunction.
  - The vehicle coming from the side suddenly changes the lane.
  - The target vehicle is obscured.
  - The radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle or electric moped) is too small.
  - The vehicle operates in severe weather conditions, such as rain or snow.
  - MmWave radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - The vehicle encounters complex metal guardrails or similar road conditions.

- Vehicles coming from the front left or right side are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
- Other conditions when targets are beyond the detection capability or range happen.

- Vibration or collision may affect mmWave radar calibration, impairing system performance. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary warning may occur in bright or reflective conditions such as puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.

WARNING

- FCTA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause FCTA to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use FCTA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- FCTA warnings may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

Front Cross Traffic Braking (FCTB)*

- When the vehicle is travelling below 12 mph (20 km/h), the front cross traffic brake (FCTB) system continuously monitor the environment ahead through sensors such as mmWave radars or cameras. If a potential collision with a crossing vehicle, pedestrian, or cyclist is detected, the system applies automatic braking to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating the collision.
- During braking, the instrument cluster issues warnings via text and visual prompts, rendered according to the radar detection side.

WARNING

- FCTB serves as a driver assistance function only, which helps the driver avoid or reduce the impact of collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking efficiency, and tyre status. It may also be mistakenly triggered by misidentification.
- Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

Settings

- Enable or disable FCTB on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

System Limitations

- FCTB is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- FCTB may not operate or disengage during a braking in certain conditions,

including but not limited to the following:

- Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
- Visibility is poor due to nighttime, rain, snow, or other extreme weather.
- There is an object obstructing the view between the target and the vehicle.
- The function is set to "OFF" or "Warning only".
- The vehicle is not in Drive.
- The bonnet, the door or the boot is not completely closed or is opened while driving.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply or rapidly.
- The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
- The driver presses and releases the brake pedal.
- System initialisation is in progress.
- The system is starting up during vehicle power-on or reboot.
- Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
- The system malfunctions or requires servicing.

- In the following situations (including but not limited to the scenarios listed below), the system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as front obstructions, obstacle type, or appearance timing, which may result in no braking, a false braking, or a delayed braking.
  - When a target vehicle is approaching from the side at a high speed, the system may not brake as appropriate.
  - MmWave radars are dirty, hazy, damaged, or blocked.
  - Detection may be affected by noise or electromagnetic interference, leading to delays or malfunction.
  - The vehicle coming from the side suddenly changes the lane.
  - The target vehicle is obscured.
  - The radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle or electric moped) is too small.
  - The vehicle operates in severe weather conditions, such as rain or snow.
  - MmWave radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - The vehicle encounters complex metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - The vehicle is heavily loaded.
  - Vehicles coming from the front left or right side are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
  - Other conditions when targets are beyond the detection capability or range happen.
- Vibration or collision may affect mmWave radar calibration, impairing system performance. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary braking may be triggered in bright or reflective conditions such as puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, FCTB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.

WARNING

- FCTB is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause FCTB to fail or lead to late braking.
- Use FCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- FCTB may be delayed, missed, or triggered unnecessarily due to system limitations.

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)

- The traffic sign recognition (TSR) system detects speed limit signs using cameras and illuminates the speed limit indicator on the instrument cluster to maintain an appropriate speed.

Function overview

- TSR contains: speed limit information function (SLIF), road sign information (RSI)*, speed limit forecast (SLF)*, and intelligent speed limit warning (ISLW).
  - SLIF detects speed limit information using cameras or map* data and illuminates the speed limit indicator on the instrument cluster.
  - Road sign information (RSI): detects road sign information by using cameras or map* data and lights up the road sign indicator on the instrument cluster.
  - SLF uses highway and urban expressway map* data to obtain the speed limit of the road ahead and displays a speed limit indicator on the instrument cluster to preview the upcoming limit and the distance to it.
  - Intelligent speed limit warning (ISLW): alerts against speeding with a speed limit indicator on the instrument cluster or an audible alarm*, when the vehicle speed exceeds the detected limit.

Settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The function is enabled by default.
- When TSR is off, neither TSR or any related feature is enabled.
- When TSR is on, SLIF and RSI* are enabled, while SLF and ISLW* can be switched on or off according to needs.
- Speed limit forecast (SLF)*: switches this feature on or off
- Speed limit change prompt tone: mutes or unmutes the tone indicating speed limit sign change.
- Intelligent speed limit warning (ISLW): enables/disables visual and/or audible alerts when the vehicle speed exceeds the detected speed limit.
- Speed limit warning (SLW): The audible alert when the vehicle exceeds the speed limit can be quickly enabled or disabled from the status bar at the top of the infotainment touchscreen.

REMINDER

- Map* data is updated regularly to ensure system performance.
- The TSR system identifies speed limit signs, not any other traffic signs, and does not involves in the active control of the vehicle. Please drive responsibly.
- The front camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. If the system is interrupted by short time periods of such blockage or exposure, the functionality should resume once the camera's field of view is cleared. If not, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- If TSR malfunctions and becomes unavailable, have the system repaired immediately.

System Limitations

- As a driver assistance system, TSR may not respond to all traffic, weather, visibility, road conditions.
- The detection of speed limit signs is easily interfered by the environment. Situations that may lead to failure or performance degradation of the system include but are not limited to:
  - The windscreen is dirty or fogged, or the front cameras are blocked.
  - The light changes suddenly, such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.
  - The speed limit signs are unclear, distorted, inclined, reflective, partly blocked, or covered.
  - Visibility is poor due to snow, rain, or fog.
  - Weight or width limit signs are not in standard size as per national regulations.
  - The system may obtain incorrect speed limit information due to time limitations of map-based* data. This may occur, for example, during road construction, when the posted speed limit has changed, or when speed limit signs are newly added or removed.
  - Vehicle positioning may be inaccurate in complex road environments, such as multi-level elevated roads or parallel main and auxiliary roads.
- The system operation may be affected by cracked windscreens within the field of view of the front camera, dyed or incorrectly coated windscreen, reflective objects placed on the dashboard, or any other interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- TSR cannot assist in speed control. Do not be over-reliant on it.
- TSR is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Be sure to mind traffic around and respond in a timely manner to control the vehicle. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

CAUTION

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:

CAUTION

- Unclear speed limit signs
- Incomplete speed limit signs

- Situations that may result in detection failure of the front camera or late function activation include but are not limited to:
  - The front camera comes off, is loosely installed, or is blocked.
  - The vehicle is operating in extreme weather conditions, such as rain, snow, or smog.
- TSR may not work, work improperly, or deactivate itself when:
  - The driver assistance system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in System Limitations happen.
  - The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Lead Car Departure Notification (LCDN)

- During driving, lead car departure notification (LCDN)* uses front mmWave radar or camera to detect the movement of the vehicle ahead. Once the lead vehicle starts, the system notifies the driver to start the vehicle promptly via instrument cluster messages and audible warnings.

Settings

- To enable or disable LCDN on the infotainment touchscreen, tap ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist**.
- LCDN is enabled by factory default.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System Limitations

- LCDN will not operate in certain driving modes such as snow or mountain mode.
- LCDN may fail to function in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - The function is disabled.
  - ACC is active.
  - The vehicle is in Park of Reverse gear.
  - The vehicle is not in ECO, Normal, or Sport mode.
  - The hazard warning light is on.
  - The driver seat belt is fastened.
  - The steering wheel angle is greater than 45°.
  - The lead vehicle is at a relatively large distance.
  - The front mmWave radar or front camera is blocked or faulty.

CAUTION

- LCDN is a warning assistance function and cannot replace your judgement. Always comply with traffic regulations.
- In case there is a collision or the sensor has been reassembled, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider or a certified repair facility for sensor calibration to avoid affecting system performance.

Side Safety Assist

Lane Departure Assist (LDA)

- When the vehicle unintentionally departs from its lane, LDA issues an alert or assists in steering the vehicle back into the lane.
- Lane departure assist (LDA) includes two sub-functions: lane departure warning (LDW) and lane departure prevention (LDP). The system's operating speed range is 41–93 mph (65–150 km/h).
- Lane departure warning (LDW): The system detects lane markings and the vehicle's position within the lane using cameras and other sensors. If the vehicle unintentionally drifts out of its lane without a driver steering input (significant steering wheel or turn signal operation), the system issues a warning via instrument cluster display (lane marking on the departure side shown in red), steering wheel vibration, or an audible alert to help reduce lane departure risks.
- Lane departure prevention (LDP): The system detects lane markings and the vehicle's position within the lane using cameras and other sensors. If the vehicle unintentionally drifts out of its lane without a driver steering input (significant steering wheel rotation or turn signal operation), the system issues a warning via instrument cluster display (lane marking on the departure side shown in blue) and applies steering assistance to guide the vehicle back into the lane, helping reduce lane departure risks.

Settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- The LDA alert mode is set to steering wheel vibration by factory default and can be changed to Sound, Vibration, or Sound + Vibration.
- LDA default sensitivity level is set as "Moderate". In case of fatigue driving, the system automatically switches to "High". Restarting the vehicle restores sensitivity to "Moderate".
- OFF: deactivates all LDA functions.
- Reminder: turns on LDW only, which does not implement steering intervention.
- Correction: only LDP enabled, steering intervention applied.
- All activated: Activating both the lane departure warning (LDW) and lane departure prevention (LDP) at the same time.
- The system restores the default settings when the vehicle is started.

REMINDER

- LDA is suppressed if a turn signal is used and the vehicle changes lane as indicated.
- LDA is suppressed in the event of continued lane straddling.
- LDP will deactivate if the driver forcefully presses the brake or accelerator pedal, or makes significant steering inputs.
- LDA is suppressed if any door, the bonnet, or the boot is open or faulty.
- The camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. If the system is interrupted by short time periods of such blockage or exposure, the functionality should resume once the camera's field of view is cleared. If not, have

REMINDER

the system repaired in a timely manner.

- While LDP is activated, the driver must keep both hands on the steering wheel, otherwise the system will audibly prompt the driver to take over the steering wheel.
- When LDA fails, and a prompt message are displayed on the instrument cluster with an audible alert. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

System Limitations

- LDA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- Lane line detection is sensitive to the environment. The system may not work or its performance may be significantly degraded in cases including but not limited to:
  - Dirty or fogged windscreen, or blocked front camera
  - Glaring from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles
  - Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel
  - Lane lines obscured by tree shadows on roads in direct sunlight on sunny days
  - Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days
  - Confusing or unclear lane markings, for example when old and new lines overlap or are temporarily altered during road construction
  - Rapid lane marking changes for example when lanes split, cross, or merge
  - Lane markings that are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred, or covered by dirt or snow
  - Cramped lanes, increased or decreased number of lanes, sudden changes of lane markings (for example, on a ramp or exit), or complex line arrangements
  - Proximity to the vehicle ahead or lane marking obstruction by the vehicle ahead, on a slope or at a sharp turn
- The system may be unable to correct steering in time due to slippery road surfaces or excessive lateral deviation speed, such as:
  - Road conditions are poor such as after road spraying, or wet/slippery surfaces following rain or snow.
  - The lateral deviation speed is excessive or insufficient.
  - Other conditions that affect or reduce the vehicle's steering performance happen.
- The system operation may be affected by cracked windscreens within the field of view of the front camera, dyed or incorrectly coated windscreen, reflective objects placed on the dashboard, or any other interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- For your safety, do not intentionally test LDA function.
- Do not be over-reliant on LDA functions. LDW only serves to alert

WARNING

for lane departure and cannot assist in steering control.

- LDA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle if the function is suppressed or deactivated. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Use LDA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- Disabling LDA is recommended under any of the following circumstances:
  - Driving in a sporty style
  - Severe weather conditions
  - On uneven roads
- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Unclear lane lines
  - Incomplete lane lines
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the camera or late function activation include but are not limited to:
  - Cameras come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
  - The vehicle is operating in extreme weather conditions, such as rain, snow, or smog.

CAUTION

  - The front camera is partially or completely blocked.
  - LDW and LDP cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as towing and snow mode.
- LDA may not work, work improperly, or deactivate itself when:
  - The driver assistance system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)*

- When the vehicle unintentionally departs from the current roadway or lane and there is a collision risk with a vehicle approaching from the rear in an adjacent lane or with oncoming traffic in the opposite lane, emergency lane keeping assist (ELKA) assists in steering correction to help avoid or mitigate a potential collision.
- ELKA detects lane markings and road edges ahead with sensors such as cameras and detect vehicles in adjacent lanes with mmWave radars. If the vehicle is detected to unintentionally drift out of its lane, or be at risk of doing so, and is likely to collide with a detected target, corrective steering input of ELKA keeps the vehicle in its lane. This helps prevent unintentional lane departures and reduces the risk of collision with oncoming traffics or overtaking vehicles in adjacent lanes.

Settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
  - The function is enabled by factory default.
  - OFF: ELKA will not operate.
  - On: ELKA is active.

REMINDER

- ELKA will deactivate if the driver forcefully presses the brake or accelerator pedal, or makes significant steering inputs.
- If the turn signal is activated and the driver steers in the indicated direction, ELKA will be suppressed when the vehicle is departing toward the road edge or toward the opposite lane with oncoming traffic present (subject to the actual vehicle configuration).
- If the driver continuously drives over lane markings or the road edge, ELKA will be suppressed.
- If there is a risk of deviation* from the road or side collision but corrective steering could result in a collision with an obstacle along the new path, ELKA will not intervene.
- The front camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. If the system is interrupted by short time periods of such blockage or exposure, the functionality should resume once the camera's field of view is cleared. If it does not, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for processing.

REMINDER

- ELKA is unavailable in the event of malfunctions, which is indicated by solid on the instrument cluster. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

System Limitations

- ELKA's detection of lane markings, road edges, and obstacles may be impaired under certain conditions, resulting in no intervention, inappropriate intervention, or degraded performance. Situations include but are not limited to:
  - Dirty or fogged windscreen, or blocked front camera
  - Glaring from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles
  - Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel
  - Lane lines obscured by tree shadows on roads in direct sunlight on sunny days
  - Unidentifiable road boundary with grass, soil, or kerb
  - Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days
  - Confusing or unclear lane markings, for example when old and new lines overlap or are temporarily altered during road construction
  - Rapid lane marking changes for example when lanes split, cross, or merge
  - Lane markings that are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred, or covered by dirt or snow

- Cramped lanes, increased or decreased number of lanes, sudden changes of lane markings (for example, on a ramp or exit), or complex line arrangements
- Proximity to the vehicle ahead or lane marking obstruction by the vehicle ahead, on a slope or at a sharp turn

- The system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as obstructions, obstacle type, position, or appearance timing, which may result in a delayed action. Situations include but are not limited to the following:
  - Large vehicles ahead block the radar or camera detection area.
  - Obstacles move quickly or enter the area in front of or beside the vehicle at close range.
  - Fences, traffic barriers, traffic cones, or other obstacles are present in the front-side or rear-side of the vehicle that the system may fail to detect.
  - Obstacles block the radar or camera's detection area, such as vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists in the front-side or rear-side areas.
  - Obstacles in the front-side or rear-side areas have low contrast against the surrounding environment.
  - Targets in the front-side or rear-side areas can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
  - Targets in the front-side or rear-side areas are located on a curve.
  - Other conditions when targets are beyond the detection capability or range happen.
- The system may be unable to correct steering in time due to slippery road surfaces or excessive lateral deviation speed, such as:
  - Road conditions are poor such as after road spraying, or wet/slippery surfaces following rain or snow.
  - The lateral deviation speed is excessive or insufficient.
  - Driving on sharp curves.
  - Other conditions that affect or reduce the vehicle's steering performance happen.
  - The system operation may be affected by cracked windscreens within the field of view of the front camera, dyed or incorrectly coated windscreen, reflective objects placed on the dashboard, or any other interference with camera sight.

WARNING

- For your safety, do not intentionally test ELKA function.
- The ELKA function only assists in correcting the vehicle back to its original lane when there is a risk of collision due to vehicle departure from the road* or lane departure, instead of keeping it centred. Do not rely on ELKA to avoid side collisions.
- ELKA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.

WARNING

- Use ELKA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

CAUTION

- Situations that may result in detection failure of mmWave radars or late warnings include, but are not limited to:
  - Cameras come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
  - The vehicle is operating in extreme weather conditions, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - Cameras are partially or completely blocked.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of mmWave radars or late alarms include, but are not limited to:
  - MmWave radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked.
  - The vehicle is operating in extreme weather conditions, such as rain, snow, or smog.
  - The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - ELKA cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as snow mode.
- ELKA may not work, may work improperly, or may deactivate itself when:
  - The vehicle is at an intersection.
  - The driver assistance system is starting up (for example during vehicle power-on or reboot).
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.

CAUTION

- The driver assistance system malfunctions or requires servicing.

Blind Spot Detection (BSD)*

- When a target in the driver's blind spot is detected, the system issues a warning to remind the driver of safe driving. The function is enabled by default.
- The blind spot detection (BSD) system uses sensors such as radars to detect targets such as vehicles or cyclists in the driver's blind spot. When the vehicle is travelling at about 10-93mph (15-150 km/h), the side mirror indicator flashes if BSD detects a target in the blind area. If the driver toggles the turn signal lever at this time, the side mirror indicator on the target side, the instrument indicator, and the light-coloured radar wave on the same side of the instrument will flash, with an audible alarm given (optional) to warn the driver of a possible collision.



REMINDER

- Do not attach any objects onto the side mirror glass. Doing so may affect BSD functionality.

REMINDER

- Ensure the normal operation of the BSD system, keeping its radars in good condition. For example, dirt, snow, or other obstructions need to be cleared right away.
- In towing mode*, BSD does not work.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the side BSD radar sensor calibration can degrade system performance. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- This function is enabled by factory default.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System Limitations

- BSD is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- Cases when BSD and its related features may operate improperly or deactivate include but are not limited to:
  - Visibility is poor due to rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, or other extreme weather.
  - The vehicle is driving on sharp curves.
  - The vehicle speed is less than 9 mph (15 km/h).
  - The vehicle is overtaking the preceding vehicle or encountering an oncoming vehicle.
- The system is starting up during vehicle power-on or reboot.
- Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
- The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- Poor lighting conditions, such as glare or reflections, may cause the system to incorrectly detect obstacles. For example, railroad tracks, gantries, height restriction bars, traffic signs, or reflective road studs may be misidentified as obstacles, triggering an unintended warning.
- BSD cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as snow mode.

WARNING

- When the BSD system gives a warning, avoid lane changes toward the warning-indicated side. Always change lanes in a safe manner.
- BSD cannot replace interior rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to follow these requirements may impair driving safety, resulting in accidents, property damage, or personal injury.

Door Open Warning (DOW)*

- When detecting a risk of collision when opening the door, the system

gives a warning to alert the driver, reducing the possibility of collision and improving safety. The function is enabled by default.

- The door open warning (DOW) system detects targets on both sides of the vehicle such as vehicles and cyclists using sensors such as radars. When the vehicle is stationary with power on or moving slowly at a speed below 1mph (2 km/h), the alarm indicator on the side mirror lights up when DOW detects a collision risk during door opening. The indicator remains on until DOW is deactivated. If an occupant opens the door at this time, the indicator on the corresponding side flashes and an audio alert sounds, reminding the occupant of the collision risk.

REMINDER

- Do not attach any objects onto the side mirror glass. Doing so may affect DOW functionality.
- Ensure the normal operation of the DOW system, keeping its radars in good condition. Dirt, snow, or other obstructions should be removed promptly.
- In towing mode, DOW does not work.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the side mmWave radars can degrade DOW performance. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- This function is enabled by factory default.
- The system is enabled by default when the vehicle is started.

System Limitations

- DOW is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- DOW and its related features may operate improperly or deactivate in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Visibility is poor due to rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, or other extreme weather.
  - The vehicle stops at a turning point or near a wall.
  - A large vehicle behind blocks the radar detection area.
  - There are small targets or slow-moving targets.
  - The target is moving fast or turning, such as changing lanes to the rear of your vehicle, or suddenly entering the detection area behind your vehicle.
- The system is starting up, for example when the vehicle has just been powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
- Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
- The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- Poor lighting conditions, such as glare or reflections, may cause the system to misdetect obstacles. For example, railroad tracks, gantries, height restriction bars, traffic signs, or reflective road studs may be misidentified as obstacles, triggering an unintended warning.

WARNING

- DOW cannot detect objects behind other vehicles or obstacles.
- DOW cannot replace the use of interior and exterior rearview mirrors or manual visual checks. Visually checking the surroundings before opening a door is the most effective safety measure and the responsibility of all occupants.
- DOW may give a warning when there is no risk of collision. Stay alert and monitor traffic to decide if action is needed.
- DOW can only prompt the collision risk through warning, but cannot avoid the collision accident.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to follow these requirements may impair driving safety, resulting in accidents, property damage, or personal injury.

Rear Safety Assist*

Rear Collision Warning (RCW)*

- The system issues a warning to the driver when a collision from behind is detected while moving forward. The function is enabled by default.
- When the vehicle is travelling below 93mph (150 km/h), the rear collision warning (RCW) system monitors the rear driving environment in real time using sensors such as radars and cameras. The system issues a warning when a rear-end collision risk is detected.
- For purpose of the warning, the interior ambient lights and the front ambient light on the corresponding side are steady on, and the rear of the vehicle image on the instrument cluster is highlighted in red. The hazard warning lights are also activated to alert following drivers.
- When reversing, the RCW system does not work.

WARNING

- RCW is a driver assistance feature. Its operation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, target type, distance to the target, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in delayed warnings, missed alerts, or false warnings. RCW cannot replace your judgement and operation.
- Ensure the normal operation of the RCW system, keeping its radars in good condition. Dirt, snow, or other obstructions should be removed promptly.
- In towing mode*, RCW does not work.
- Influence of vibration or collision on the rear mmWave radars can degrade RCW performance. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.

- This function is disabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.

System Limitations

- RCW is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- RCW only takes effect when the vehicle is stationary or moving forward. RCW does not operate while the vehicle is reversing.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Visibility is poor due to rain, snow, fog, heavy smoke, or other extreme weather.
  - Any door, the bonnet, or the boot lid is open or faulty.
  - The driver turns the steering wheel, or the vehicle has a risk of lateral instability (such as excessive steering wheel angle or high steering rate).
  - The driver brakes hard.
  - The system is in the process of starting. For example, the vehicle is just powered on or the driver assistance system is restarting.
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The system is malfunctioning or requires servicing.
- The system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as rear obstructions, obstacle type, position, or appearance timing, which may result in no warning or a delayed warning. Situations include but are not limited to the following:
  - The vehicle is operating in poor weather conditions such as rain, snow, or fog.
  - Large vehicles behind block the radar or camera detection area.
  - The rear area is obstructed, or the obstacles have low contrast against the front environment, resulting in incomplete, inaccurate, or unclear detection.
  - The vehicle or the rear target is on a curve.
  - Targets behind can only be detected after the vehicle changes lanes.
  - Obstacles move quickly or enter the area behind the vehicle at close range.
  - The vehicle is reversing.
  - Other conditions when targets are beyond the detection capability or range happen.
- Poor lighting conditions, such as glare or reflections, may cause the system to incorrectly detect obstacles. For example, railroad tracks, gantries, height restriction bars, traffic signs, or reflective road studs may be misidentified as obstacles, triggering an unintended warning.
- RCW cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as snow mode.

WARNING

- RCW is a driver assistance feature. Its operation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, target type, distance to the target, driving environment, and system response delay. RCW only provides reminder assistance and cannot replace your judgement and operation. Do not be over-reliant on the RCW system. RCW

WARNING

cannot replace your judgement and operation.

- RCW can only remind the collision risk through the reminder, and can not avoid the collision accident or reduce the collision injury. When the vehicle issues a warning, you should take immediate measures to prevent the vehicle from further danger.
- RCW may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.
- You are supposed to always be alert to all possible dangers around and intervene or control the vehicle whenever necessary, for example, by slowing down, braking, or steering away as appropriate. Failure to follow these requirements may impair driving safety, resulting in accidents, property damage, or personal injury.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)*

- When the vehicle is reversing, the rear cross traffic alert (RCTA) system detects moving vehicles in the rear blind spot and issues a warning when it detects a potential collision risk with rear lateral crossing vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists. The RCTA operating speed range is 0–9 mph (0–15 km/h).
- This warning is provided through an audible alert, voice notifications, an animation of radar waves indicating the side of possible collision, target rendering on the instrument cluster.

WARNING

- RCTA is a driver assistance feature. Its operation may be affected by factors such as vehicle speed, sensor accuracy, target type, distance to the target, driving environment, and system response delay, which may result in delayed warnings, missed alerts, or false warnings. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards.

Settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- This function is enabled by factory default.
- The system is enabled by default when the vehicle is started.

System Limitations

- RCTA is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to issue a warning in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Visibility is poor due to nighttime, rain, snow, or other extreme weather.
  - The function is disabled.
  - The vehicle is not in Reverse.
  - System initialisation is in progress.
  - The system is starting up during vehicle power-on or reboot.

- Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
- The system malfunctions or requires servicing.

- The system may fail to detect, misidentify, or detect obstacles with a delay due to factors such as rear obstructions, obstacle type, position, or appearance timing, which may result in no warning or a delayed warning. Situations include but are not limited to the following:
  - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane at the last minute.
  - The target vehicle is approaching from behind at a high speed.
  - The vehicle is operating in sharp curves, slopes, or similar road conditions.
  - The target is obscured.
  - The vehicle operations in severe weather conditions, such as rain or snow. Radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked. The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, cyclist, e-bicycle, or motorcycle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.
  - The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- In towing mode*, RCTA does not work.
- Vibration or collision may affect mmWave radar calibration, impairing system performance. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary warning may occur in bright or reflective conditions such as puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- RCTA cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as snow mode.

WARNING

- RCTA is only a driver assistance feature, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause RCTA to fail or lead to late warning.
- Use RCTA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- RCTA may be delayed, missed, or falsely triggered due to system limitations.

Rear Cross Traffic Brake (RCTB)*

- The rear cross traffic brake (RCTB) system warns the driver and assists with braking when the vehicle is reversing out of a vertical or angled parking space and there is a collision risk with rear lateral crossing vehicles, pedestrians, or cyclists. This helps avoid collisions with traffic crossing behind the vehicle, particularly when the driver's view is blocked by

neighboring parked vehicles. The RCTB operating speed range is 0–6 mph (0–10 km/h).

- When braking, the instrument cluster displays light grey radar waves on the corresponding side of the vehicle and textual prompts to alert the driver of potential risks.

WARNING

- RCTB serves as a driver assistance function only, which helps the driver avoid or reduce the impact of collisions.
- Braking is influenced by multiple variables, including the vehicle's speed, sensor accuracy, object type, spatial relationship to the target, system response time, braking efficiency, and tyre status. It may also be mistakenly triggered by misidentification. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards.

Settings

- Enable or disable the function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**.
- This function is enabled by factory default.
- The system is enabled by default when the vehicle is started.

System Limitations

- RCTB is a driver assistance system and may not function under all traffic, weather, visibility, road, or vehicle conditions.
- The system may fail to brake in the following situations (including but not limited to):
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - Visibility is poor due to nighttime, rain, snow, or other extreme weather.
  - The function is set to "OFF" or "Warning only".
  - The vehicle is not in Reverse.
  - The driver presses the accelerator pedal hard.
  - System initialisation is in progress.
  - The system is starting up, for example when the vehicle has just been powered on or is restarting.
  - Situations mentioned in General System Limitations happen.
  - The system malfunctions or requires servicing.
- The system may fail to detect, misidentify, or experience delayed detection of obstacles due to factors such as rear obstructions, obstacle type, position, or timing, which may result in no braking or a delayed braking. Situations include but are not limited to the following:
  - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane at the last minute.
  - The target vehicle is approaching from behind at a high speed.
  - The vehicle is operating in sharp curves, slopes, or similar road conditions.
  - The target is obscured.
  - The vehicle operations in severe weather conditions, such as rain or snow. Radars are coming off, loosely installed, or blocked. The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
  - Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If

the radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle, three-wheeler, carriage, pedestrian, cyclist, e-bicycle, or motorcycle) is too small, the system may be unable to determine the distance to the target ahead, resulting in a delayed or no response.

- The mmWave radar may malfunction or misidentify targets due to interference from other mmWave radars.

- In towing mode*, RCTB does not work.
- Vibration or collision may affect mmWave radar calibration, impairing system performance. In this case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Unnecessary braking may be triggered in bright or reflective conditions such as puddles, shadows, manhole covers, metal plates, or road signs.
- To avoid unnecessary repeated braking, RCTB will not be triggered again within tens of seconds after the initial activation.
- RCTB cannot be activated in special driving modes* such as snow mode.

WARNING

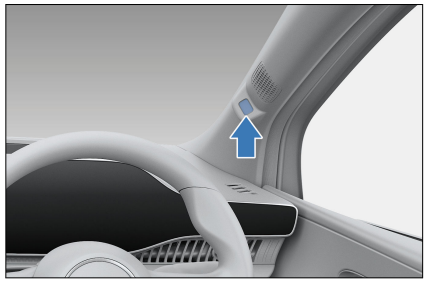
- RCTB is only used as a driving assistance function, and limitations and cautions listed here include only common situations affecting its functionality. Factors associated with system performance are more than these. Always mind surrounding traffic and respond promptly to control the vehicle when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause RCTB to fail or lead to late braking.
- Use RCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.
- RCTB may be delayed, missed, or triggered unnecessarily due to system limitations.

Driver Monitoring System (DMS)

The driver monitoring system (DMS), including fatigue and distraction driving warnings, is designed to monitor and assess the driving status locally by taking cabin photos with the system's camera. Based on the results, it reminds the driver of safe and careful driving.

How to Use

- The camera for DMS is mounted on the A-pillar of the driver side. Make sure the camera is not obstructed, otherwise, DMS will fail to work.



- To enable or disable DMS, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Cabin Perception**.

Activation Conditions

- DMS enabled.

- Camera unobstructed and functioning normally.

Functions

Fatigue driving warning

- When the vehicle speed meets the activation conditions and the fatigue driving warning is enabled, the system monitors the driver's state. If signs of fatigue are detected, such as eye closure or prolonged driving, it alerts the driver through a visual warning on the instrument cluster, the voice assistant, or an audible alarm.

Distraction driving warning

- When the vehicle speed meets the activation conditions and the distraction driving warning is enabled, the system monitors the driver's state. If signs of distraction are detected, such as failing to look ahead for a period of time without steering or turn signal operation, it alerts the driver through a visual warning on the instrument cluster, the voice assistant, or an audible alarm.

REMINDER

- Clean the DMS camera lens with a clean and soft cloth and exercise caution to prevent any damage to the surface.

Precautions

- The driver monitoring system is only an auxiliary system and is not capable of effective recognition and alarm-raising in all situations. Make sure to drive safely, observe surrounding traffic conditions, and obey local laws and regulations regarding driving.
- The proper functioning and accuracy of DMS can be affected by a number of situations, including but not limited to:
  - The in-vehicle camera permission is not enabled.
  - Driver monitoring assistance is disabled.
  - The camera is obstructed.
  - The camera is directly exposed to strong light.
  - Part of the driver's face is exposed to light or the complete facial features are hard to recognise.
  - The driver wears infrared-blocking glasses or glasses with thick lenses.
  - The driver wears a mask or objects that covers the face.
  - The driver is not properly seated or the driver's face is in the blind spot of the camera.

WARNING

- Pull over as soon as possible when you feel tired.

Child Presence Detection (CPD)*

After the vehicle is powered off and the doors are closed or locked, child presence detection (CDP), as an auxiliary reminder function, is performed to detects life presence in the second-row seats. If life presence is detected, a reminder is given in the form of light flashing and honking. The A/C will be switched on soon after. Open any door to cancel the reminder.

Activation Conditions

- CPD is activated when all the following conditions are met:
  - The vehicle is powered off.

- When the vehicle is stationary, the driver's door is opened and then closed.
- All doors are closed.
- CPD Function is enabled.
- CPD system has no fault.

How to Use

- To enable or disable CPD on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → **Cabin Perception**. **Standard** and **Delay** modes are provided.
- By default, CPD is enabled with standard mode each time when the vehicle is powered on.
- OFF: CPD function is disabled.
- Delay: extends the reminder for 5 minutes.

System Response

Initial alarm

- When CPD is enabled with Standard mode:
  - If life presence is detected after the vehicle is powered off and locked, the initial alarm (light flashing and honking) starts within 15 seconds and will last for about 6 seconds.
  - If life presence is detected after the vehicle is powered off with doors closed but not locked, the initial alarm (light flashing and honking) starts within 5 minutes and will last for about 6 seconds.
- When CPD is enabled with Delay mode:
  - If life presence is detected after the vehicle is powered off with doors closed, the initial alarm (light flashing and honking) starts within 5 minutes and will last for about 6 seconds.

Escalated alarm

- If the initial alarm is not cancelled,
  - the alarm (light flashing and honking) escalates after 80 seconds and will last for about 25 minutes.

Other system responses

- If the initial alarm is not cancelled,
  - The A/C will be switched on 3 minutes after the escalated alarm, and will keep running for about 30 minutes.

Cancelling the alarm

- You can cancel the alarm using any of the following methods:
  - Tap the button on the infotainment touchscreen to cancel the alarm for current power-off cycle (from the current power-off to the next power-on).
  - Unlock the vehicle or open any door to cancel the current alarm. Unlocking the vehicle temporarily cancels the current alarm; if no door is opened promptly, the alarm will be retriggered.

Message delivery

- The user will receive messages in the BYD app and email of the initial alarm.
- The user will receive messages in the BYD app and email of the escalated alarm.
- The user will receive messages in the BYD app and email of other system responses.

WARNING

- While light flashing, honking, app message prompts, email messages, and A/C operation reduce the harm to the life

WARNING

presence in the vehicle, they cannot completely prevent harms. CPD is only an auxiliary system and is not capable of effective recognition and alarm-raising in all situations. The user must remain alarm at all times and fully responsible for the lives in the vehicle.

- When a reminder is provided, check whether any life presence has been locked inside the vehicle promptly to avoid further safety incident.

CAUTION

- CPD is only an auxiliary reminder system, and cannot ensure every alarm-raising when life presence is left in the vehicle. The user must remain alarm (especially for child) at all times and fully responsible for the lives in the vehicle.
- The alarm may be given for adults, pets, or other lives detected.
- The alarm may be given for moving objects detected.
- The alarm cannot be cancelled by unlocking the vehicle remotely from the app.
- The system may not be able to trigger an escalated alarm or switch on the A/C if the SOC is low. Keeping the vehicle at high SOC is recommended.

Direct Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

- The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) is an auxiliary system that monitors tyre pressure in real time to improve vehicle safety and comfort and reduce tyre wear and energy consumption due to insufficient tyre pressure.
- You can navigate to the driving information bar by pressing the on the steering wheel and to the tyre pressure display screen by pressing the button again.

Tyre pressure system alarm

- When the pressure of any tyre is lower than 80% of the standard tyre pressure and the system is running, the tyre pressure fault warning light lights up and the tyre pressure value turns yellow. In that case, it is recommended to check for slow air leakage and inflate the tyre to the correct pressure value.
- When the temperature of any tyre is above 85°C for three consecutive minutes, the tyre pressure system gives a high temperature alarm, and the temperature value of the corresponding tyre turns yellow. It is recommended to stop the vehicle and wait for the tyre temperature to decrease before further driving.
- When the system is running, if a fault occurs, the tyre pressure fault warning light is solid on after flashing, and the message "No Signal" or "Please check TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster. In that case, check the tyre pressure monitoring module, and check for any surrounding electromagnetic source nearby. If the alarm persists for a long time, contact

a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- If the tyre pressure is abnormal, this system does not prevent the vehicle from travelling. Therefore, each time before driving, ensure that the tyre pressure conforms to the requirements specified by the manufacturer. If not, do not drive, otherwise vehicle damage or personal injuries can occur.
- If pressure is found to be abnormal while driving, check the tyre pressure immediately. If the low pressure warning light comes on, avoid sharp turns or emergency braking, slow down to pull over to the kerb as soon as possible. Driving with low tyre pressure can cause permanent damage to tyres and increase the likelihood of tyre scrapping. Serious tyre damage can lead to traffic accidents, resulting in serious injuries or deaths.

CAUTION

- The running time of the tyre pressure monitoring module is related to the daily travel distance and other factors.
- The monitoring module regularly transmits tyre pressure and other information to the display. Therefore, if the tyre pressure drops suddenly or there is a flat tyre, the monitoring module will not transmit data to the display until the next monitoring. In this case, the vehicle may be out of control. If there is a flat tyre and monitoring fails to inform, or if you feel that there are some tyre problems, stop driving immediately instead of waiting for the display to signal an alarm.
- Incorrectly installed monitoring module affects the air tightness of the tyre. It is recommended that the installation and replacement of the pressure monitoring module be carried out by professional technicians of a BYD authorised dealer or service provider in accordance with the requirements of the installation manual.
- Since tyre pressure varies with regional temperatures, inflate or deflate the tyres according to the values displayed on the instrument cluster and the standard tyre pressure values.
- The tyre pressure monitoring system may be disturbed by non-BYD approved electrical accessories on the vehicle. This is not a tyre pressure system failure.
- The tyre pressure system needs to be matched again after replacement of wheel rims or spare tyres* or tyre rotations. Go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider to re-match the tyre pressure.

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)

System Function

The acoustic vehicle alerting system (AVAS) refers to the broadcast to pedestrians near the vehicle when it is travelling at low speed.

- When the vehicle is moving forward:

- The alert volume increases with vehicle speed in the range of 0–12 mph (0–20 km/h).
- The alert volume decreases with vehicle speed in the range of 12–18 mph (20–30 km/h).
- At speeds above 19 mph (30 km/h), the broadcast sound stops automatically.

- The vehicle makes a continuous and balanced prompt sound when reversing.

Disabling/Enabling the System

- To turn on or off* the engine sound simulator, slide down from the top of the infotainment touchscreen to access the shortcut screen (not supported in some regions).

WARNING

- The AVAS pause switch* can only be used if there are no other road users within a short distance, and no audio prompt is needed considering the surroundings (for example, in a traffic jam or on the motorway). As long as pedestrians may appear around the vehicle, the AVAS needs to be turned on.
- Pedestrians will not be alerted by the vehicle if it is approaching slowly with AVAS turned off, which may cause accidents and even casualties in severe cases.
- If the AVAS sound cannot be heard when driving at a low speed, stop the vehicle in a relatively safe and quiet place, open the window, and then drive at a constant speed of 12 mph (20 km/h) in Drive and check whether the sound can be heard. If it is confirmed that there is no sound, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider to deal with it.

WARNING

BYD authorised dealer or service provider to deal with it.

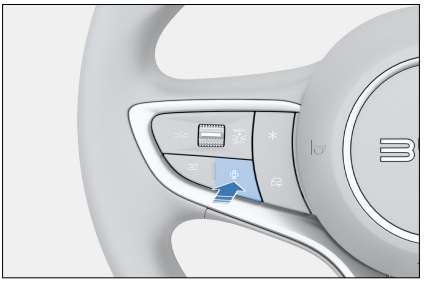
Around View Monitor (AVM)*

The around view monitor (AVM) system, also known as the 360-degree imaging system, provides real-time image (bird's-eye view) by seamlessly stitching images from four wide-angle cameras installed at the front, rear, left, and right sides of the vehicle. This helps the driver understand the surrounding blind spots including areas close to the ground.

AVM Access

Engaging manually

- To access the AVM screen, press the AVM button on the steering wheel.
- Shift into Reverse and the AVM screen is automatically displayed to show the rear view.
- You can also tap → **Vehicle Image** on infotainment touchscreen to access the AVM screen.



Triggered in Drive*

- After the infotainment system is powered on, the AVM will be automatically activated when the

vehicle switches from Park to Drive for the first time.

Triggered by radars

- AVM is automatically activated when the radars detect obstacles around the vehicle.

Triggered by turn signal*

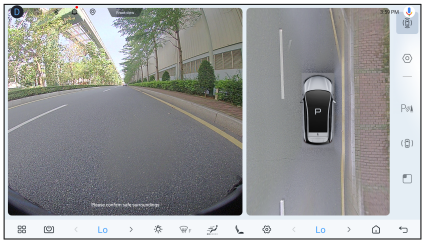
- You can enable or disable the turn signal trigger function via Sidebar → **Trigger Settings** → **Low-speed steering linkage**.
- When the vehicle is in Drive with a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h) or slower, turning on the turn signal starts the AVM. If the speed is 19 mph (30 km/h) or higher, the AVM function turns off automatically.

AVM Operation

AVM Icon	Name
	AVM settings
	Parking radar
	Dual view
	Floating window

Switching perspectives

- Tap the front/back/right/left areas of the vehicle model to switch the displayed perspective.
- In the single front and rear views, double-tap the image section to switch to a wide-angle full-screen view.



Switching views

- Tap the to switch between 2D dual and 2D single views.

Radar display

- Tap the radar icon to enable or disable the radar display in the AVM screen. The system detects the obstacle's distance from the vehicle. and alerts the driver to their proximity via an image on the infotainment touchscreen and an audible alarm*.

Transparent around view:

- Tap the vehicle model to switch between transparent and solid vehicle views. When the vehicle speed is 19 mph (30 km/h) or higher, the transparent around view automatically turns off.
- During each power cycle, the image before last power-off is displayed for the initial transparent around view. Foreign bodies shown may be inconsistent with the actual ones in the underbody and surrounding blind areas. The underbody image update will begin only after the vehicle has started to move and will be complete when the vehicle has been driven beyond its length.

AVM settings

- Tap on the sidebar to enter the AVM setting screen where you can set the vehicle image, triggering ways or restore default settings.

WARNING

- This system uses wide-angle fisheye cameras, so the object on the display screen may appear somewhat deformed in comparison with the actual object.
- The system is only to be used for parking/driving assistance. It is not safe to rely solely on this system to park or drive the vehicle, because there are some blind spots in front of and behind the vehicle. The surroundings of the vehicle should be observed in other ways during the parking/driving process, so as to avoid accidents.
- When the side mirrors are not extended in place, do not use the AVM system. When using the AVM system for parking/driving, ensure that all doors are closed.
- The distance to an object displayed on the AVM screen may be different from the distance perceived subjectively, especially when the object is closer to the vehicle. Assess the distance in various ways.
- Cameras are installed on the front bumper, on the lower parts of the side mirrors, and above the rear license plate. Make sure the cameras are unobstructed.
- To prevent impairing camera performance, avoid spraying directly on the cameras with high-pressure water. Wipe any water or dust off the camera in time.

WARNING

- Protect the cameras from any impact to prevent damage or malfunction.
- After the vehicle is powered on, if you press the AVM start button or shift into Reverse while the infotainment system is not fully activated, the output on the AVM screen will be delayed or the screen will flash. This is a normal part of the camera power-on process.
- The AVM system provides transparent AVM view to show the image below the vehicle. This function is only for assisting in observation of area below the vehicle during parking/driving. Investigation of foreign objects below the vehicle and dangerous situations should be carried out in any other manner to ensure the safety of personnel and the vehicle.
- When the vehicle runs at a low speed, the transparent AVM view function is affected by speed fluctuation or multiple stops, so there will be misalignment between the images below the vehicle and that outside the vehicle.

Parking Assist

- During parking, the parking assist system detects obstacles using sensors and alerts the driver to their proximity via an image on the infotainment touchscreen and an audible alarm.
- This system aids in reversing, but always remain aware of the surroundings behind and around the vehicle during reversing.

- When you shift into Reverse, the infotainment touchscreen will automatically display a reversing image.
- For your driving safety, when the reversing image is displayed, all buttons will be disabled except some volume and calls-related buttons.
- Once reversing is complete, the interface will be restored.

WARNING

- When the vehicle speed is over 7 mph (10 km/h), the parking assist system will cease to operate.
- Make sure the sensors' working range is clear of any object.
- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not wash the sensor with water or steam.
- When no camera is available, a "No video signal detected" message is displayed.

Parking Radar Switch

- To turn the parking sensors on or off, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Parking Assist**.
- When the ignition is switched on, the parking assist system is enabled automatically.
- When the parking assist system is enabled, the vehicle is not in Park, and both the EPB and AVH are released, the system enters obstacle detection mode. If obstacles are detected around the vehicle, a warning is issued. If the system is disabled, no warning is provided.

Working example of centre sensors

Sensor Type

- When the sensor detects an obstacle, an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen according to the location of the obstacle and its distance from the vehicle.
- When the driver conducts parallel parking or reverse parking, the sensor measures the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle and communicates this information through the infotainment touchscreen and the speaker. Be aware of the surroundings when using this system.

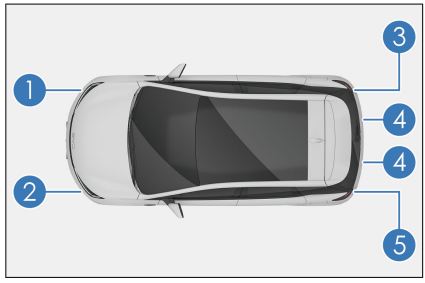
① Front right corner sensor*

② Front left corner sensor*

③ Rear right corner sensor

④ Rear centre sensors

⑤ Rear left corner sensor



Distance Display and Speaker

For obstacles detected, the location and distance from the vehicle are indicated by an image on the infotainment touchscreen and the alarm is sounded.

Approximate Distance	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm
About 28-47 in. (700-1200 mm)		Slow
About 16-27 in. (400-700 mm)		Fast
About 8-16 in. (200-400 mm)		Continuous

Working example of corner sensors

Approximate Distance	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm
About 16-23 in. (400-600 mm)		Fast
About 8-16 in. (200-400 mm)		Continuous

⚠ CAUTION

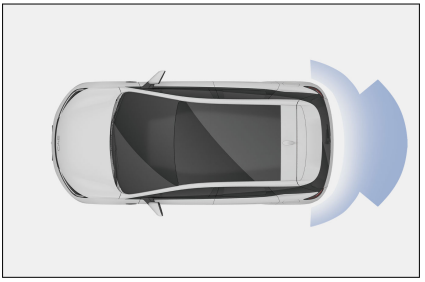
- The system has a blind spot range of 0-8 in. (0-200 mm) with reduced detection accuracy and less precise alerts. Alerts within 0-8 in. (0-200 mm) are for reference only.

Working Sensors and Detection Range

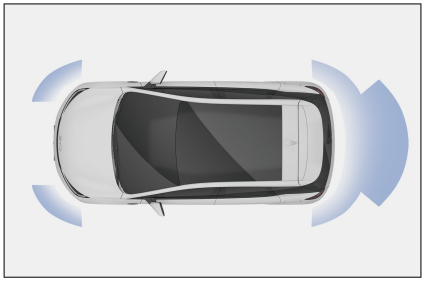
All sensors are activated upon reversing.

The illustration shows the sensors' detection range. Sensors have a range limitation, so check the surroundings, then reverse slowly.

Configuration 1



Configuration 2



REMINDER

- The parking assist system is only for assistance, and is not a substitute for personal judgement. Be sure to operate the vehicle based on your observations.
- Sensors will not work properly if accessories or other objects are placed within their detection range.
- In some cases, the system cannot operate properly and will fail to detect certain objects as the vehicle approaches them. Therefore, be sure to observe the vehicle's surroundings at all times. Do not rely solely upon the system.
- Failure of the parking radar system * is indicated by a message on the instrument cluster and a beep. In that case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.

Sensor detection information

- Certain vehicle conditions and surroundings may affect the sensors' ability to accurately detect obstacles. Detection accuracy may be affected if:
  - There is dirt, water or fog on the sensor.
  - There is snow or frost on the sensor.
  - The sensor is masked in any way.
  - The vehicle leans significantly to one side or is overloaded.
  - The vehicle is moving on particularly bumpy roads, slopes, gravel or grass.
  - The sensor has been repainted.
  - The vicinity is noisy due to honking of vehicles, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other noises that produce ultrasonic waves.
  - There's another vehicle with parking assist system nearby.
  - The vehicle is fitted with a tow eye.
  - The bumper or the sensor was hit hard.
  - The vehicle is approaching a high or zigzag kerb.
  - The vehicle is driving in the sun or in the cold.
  - The vehicle is fitted with non-original, lower suspension.
- Except as described above, sensors may not be able to correctly determine the actual distance due to the shape of the object.
- The shape and material of obstacles may prevent sensors from detecting them, especially:
  - Electric wires, fences, and ropes
  - Cotton, snow, and other materials that absorb radio waves
  - Any object with sharp edges and corners
  - Low obstacles
  - High obstacles facing outwards towards the vehicle

- Any object under the bumper
- Any object close to the vehicle.
- Persons near the vehicle (depending on the type of clothing)

- If an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen* or there is a beep, it may be that the sensor detects an obstacle or is interfered. If the issue persists, go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection.

CAUTION

- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not wash the sensor area with water or steam.

Driving Safety System

For better driving safety, the following driving safety systems works automatically based on driving conditions. However, these systems only provide assistance, and over-reliance on them is risky.

Intelligent Power Braking System

- Intelligent power braking is an advanced decoupled electro-hydraulic brake system, incorporating vacuum booster, electronic vacuum pump, anti-lock braking system (ABS), and electronic stability control (ESC) system and other features.
- The system assists vehicle braking according to the driver's demands and improves vehicle stability, comfort, and the recovery efficiency of brake energy.

Vehicle dynamics control (VDC)

When the vehicle turns suddenly while driving, if the vehicle swerves from the driver's normal lane, the VDC will correct the situation by engaging brakes to the corresponding wheels to help the driver control skidding and maintain directional stability.

Traction control system (TCS)

TCS prevents the drive wheels from skidding during acceleration by reducing the motor power, and, when necessary, applies braking forces to prevent drive wheels from spinning. It makes it easier for the vehicle to start, accelerate, and climb under adverse driving conditions.

WARNING

- TCS may not work effectively in the following situations:
  - On slippery roads, even if TCS is working properly, it may not be able to control the direction and meet power requirements.
  - Do not drive in conditions where the vehicle may lose its stability and power.

Hill hold control (HHC)

After the brake pedal is released, HHC maintains brake pressure for one second to prevent backward sliding.

Hydraulic brake assist (HBA)

When the brake pedal is pressed quickly, HBA recognises that the vehicle is in emergency mode and actively improves the brake pressure. This allows ABS to intervene more quickly, effectively shortening the brake distance.

Controlled deceleration for parking brake (CDP)

When you engage the EPB, the CDP function starts working so that the vehicle brakes at a constant deceleration (0.4 g if EPB is engaged but the brake pedal is not pressed, and 0.8 g if EPB is engaged and the brake pedal is pressed) until the

vehicle stops. The function stops working when the EPB is released.

Intelligent power braking system has the following new functions compared with the original ESC system:

- Brake assist mode
  - The brake assist mode is used to adjust the brake pedal feel. The relation curve between the brake pedal depth and the vehicle deceleration varies across different modes. The driver can select a brake assist mode preferred.
  - You can set Comfort or Sport pedal feel on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **Drive** → **Driving Control**→ **Brake Assist Mode**.
- Comfort stop
  - Comfort stop (CST) function: When the vehicle decelerates to stop in a non-emergency situation, the intelligent power braking system reduces the stop-instant suspension pitch and impact by controlling the brake pressure of the four brakes, providing a smooth stop feeling for the driver.
  - Enable or disable this function on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping ⚙ → **Drive** → **Driving Control**.
  - After the function is triggered, the braking distance may increase by 0.8–2 in (2–5 cm). Increase the distance from the vehicle or obstacle ahead accordingly before stopping your vehicle.
- Brake disc wiping
  - Brake disc wiping function: When the wiper switch is on, the intelligent power braking system applies a small brake pressure to all four brakes so that pads come into contact with discs to remove the water film from the discs. This shortens brake response time and braking distance.
  - As long as the system detects rain or the wiper ON signal, the brake discs are repeatedly wiped at certain intervals to improve safety.

ESC operation instructions

- ESC working
  - If there is a risk of skidding or backsliding when the vehicle starts on a slope, or if either drive wheel is spinning, the ESC indicator flashes to indicate that ESC system is working.
- Disabling ESC
  - If the vehicle gets stuck in snow or mud, ESC may reduce power output from the motor to the wheels, where the system should be turned off to get out of the jam.
- Turning off ESC
  - To turn off the ESC system, press the physical button or go to the infotainment system. ESC also checks its operating status in real time. If the ESC OFF switch is pressed while ESC is working, it completes the active intervention control this time rather than executes the "OFF" command immediately. ESC is disabled only after the intervention control is complete.
  - Some ESC functions may be re-enabled if you press the ESC OFF switch again or the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold of 50 mph (80 km/h). ESC may be re-enabled only if the ESC is not in a vehicle dynamic intervention state.
- ESC OFF switch mis-operation*
  - ESC is considered to be mis-operated if the ESC OFF switch is pressed and held for more than 10 seconds. In

that case, all internal ESC functions continue to work.

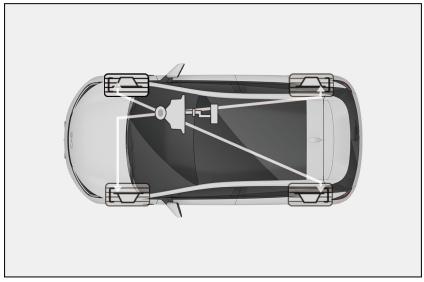
- Restarting ESC after the motor is powered off
  - When the ESC system has been turned off, restarting the motor will automatically restart ESC system.
- ESC start and speed linkage
  - Although already turned off, the ESC system can start on its own if the vehicle becomes extremely unstable as the speed increases and exceeds the threshold of 50 mph (80 km/h).
- With ESC system activated
  - If the ESC fault indicator flashes, drive with caution.
- With ESC system disabled
  - Be careful when ESC is disabled, and drive at speeds suitable for road conditions. The ESC system ensures vehicle stability and its driving force. Never turn it off unless necessary.
- Replacing tyres
  - Make sure all tyres are of the same size, brand, tread pattern, and total load. In addition, be sure to inflate tyres to the recommended pressure.
  - Neither ABS nor ESC will work properly if the vehicle is fitted with different tyres.
  - For details on tyre or wheel replacement, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Tyre and suspension handling
  - The use of any defective tyre or modified suspension affects the driving safety system and may cause the system to fail.

Multi-collision braking (MCB)*

- If an accident requires airbags activation, the vehicle engages automatic braking.
- Speed reduction, along with intervention by additional driving systems (ESC and ABS), assists the vehicle to maintain stability and lane position.
- Hazard and brake lights also light up to alert oncoming traffic and prevent further collisions.
- To support emergency service rescue and vehicle recovery, brakes will release and brake lights will go off after the accident.
- The driver can interrupt the multi-collision braking at any time by accelerating or braking.

Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)

- The ABS hydraulic system has two separate circuits. Each circuit runs diagonally through the vehicle (the left front wheel brake is connected to the right rear wheel brake). If one circuit fails, two wheels can still be braked.
- ABS helps maintain steering control by preventing the wheels from locking or skidding when brake is engaged suddenly or on slippery roads.



- When the ABS is working, the ESC indicator will flash and the brake pedal will vibrate, which may produce noise. This is because the ABS is

pulsating the brake quickly, which is normal. In this situation, you should press and hold the brake pedal instead of pumping the brakes. This allows ABS to function as designed. While steering away from danger, a firm and steady pressure should always be maintained on the brake pedal for the ABS to work.

WARNING

- ABS cannot work effectively under the following conditions:
  - Tyres with inadequate grip are used (for example, excessively worn tyres used on snow-covered roads).
  - The vehicle skids when driving at a high speed on slippery roads.
- ABS is not designed to reduce the braking distance of the vehicle. Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead when:
  - Driving on slippery, muddy, sandy or snowy roads.
  - Driving on roads with multiple potholes or on uneven roads.
  - Driving on bumpy roads.

CAUTION

- If the ABS fault warning light is still on while the braking system warning light is on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.

CAUTION

- ABS does not reduce the time and distance required to stop the vehicle. This system only helps you control steering when braking. Always keep a safe distance from other vehicles.
- ABS cannot prevent skidding caused by sudden direction change, such as trying to make a sharp turn or change lanes suddenly. Always drive carefully at a safe speed, regardless of road and weather conditions.
- ABS does not prevent decrease in stability either. When applying the brake in an emergency, the steering should be moderate. A large or sharp turn during the driving can cause the vehicle to swerve into oncoming traffic or run off the road.
- When driving on wet or soft or uneven roads (such as waterlogged concrete roads, waterlogged epoxy painted roads, sandy roads, snowy roads), vehicles equipped with ABS may require longer braking distances than vehicles without ABS. In such cases, reduce the vehicle speed and keep a greater distance from other vehicles.

05 IN-VEHICLE DEVICES

Infotainment System..... 186
A/C System..... 197
BYD App..... 201
Storage..... 202
Other Devices..... 204

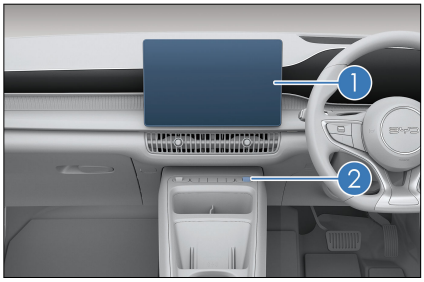
Infotainment System

Infotainment Touchscreen

When the ignition is on, the initial screen is displayed for several seconds and the infotainment system starts to work. To better experience infotainment functions, such as intelligent voice control, apps and video call, the system must be used after network connection.

① Infotainment touchscreen

② Rocker switch



- Scroll up to turn volume up or down to turn volume down.
- With the infotainment system on, press the scroll button to mute the system and go to the screen saver interface or turn off the screen (set in the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Audio & Display** → **Screen**). Press the scroll button again to unmute and turn on the screen.
- Press and hold the scroll button for three seconds to restart the infotainment system.

Factory reset

- Tap ⊞ → ⚙ → **System** → **Reset options** to factory reset the infotainment system.
  - This action factory resets the infotainment system.
    - During the process, do not touch any infotainment button or turn off the power supply, or errors may occur.
    - The process takes two to five minutes.

WARNING

- Do not use a high-power inverter in the vehicle, as this may cause infotainment system malfunction.
- Do not format or root the device, as this may cause infotainment system or vehicle malfunction.

CAUTION

- To prevent damage to the touchscreen:
  - Touch the screen gently. If there is no response, remove your finger from the screen, then touch it again.
  - Clean the screen with a soft cloth. Do not use any cleaning product.
- Using the touchscreen
  - When the screen temperature is low, the image displayed may be darker or the system may work slightly slower than normal.
  - The screen may be dark or difficult to see when you are wearing sunglasses. In that case, change the viewing angle or take off the sunglasses.
  - Touchscreen buttons that are greyed out cannot be operated.
- The touchscreen interface shown here is for reference only.

CAUTION

- Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider in the event of a failure.

Infotainment System

- When the infotainment system is started for the first time, a warning message will appear. Tap **Agree** to enter the system.
- After the system starts, the home screen is displayed automatically. The home screen consists of status bar, navigation bar, and desktop widgets.
- Top status bar:

  The top status bar displays various status icons.

  These icons fall into two categories: interactive icons* that can be tapped to perform specific functions and status-only icons that display related information.
- Shortcut menu:

  Swipe down from the top of the touchscreen to open the shortcut menu. The shortcut menu includes modules for quick operations, brightness and volume adjustments.
- Navigation bar:

  Press and hold the navigation bar to open the control menu and applications*. You can customise the navigation bar according to your preferences.

  - : returns to the previous screen or exits the program.
  - : returns to the homepage.

    Tap and hold this button to switch between wallpaper and map desktops views, depending on your preference.
  - : goes to the vehicle setting screen.
  - : goes to the application list screen*.
  - : tap the button to split screen, and tap a second time to exit.
- Task management centre*:

  Swiping up from the bottom of the touchscreen opens the task management centre.
- Desktop widget*:

  The default desktop layout displays pre-installed widgets. You can add, remove, or reposition widgets based on your preferences. Some widgets are fixed and cannot be replaced.

REMINDER

- The availability of applications depends on the vehicle's actual configuration.

Settings

The settings include the following modules: Bluetooth, Network & Internet, Notifications, Profiles & Accounts, Location, Privacy, Accessibility, Security, Apps, Assistant & Voice, System, and Google Account.

- Bluetooth: manages Bluetooth device pairing and connections, supporting wireless audio transmission and peripheral control.
- Network & Internet: configure Wi-Fi, mobile network, VPN, and hotspot sharing to optimise network connectivity.

- Notifications: customise notification priority, display style, and Do Not Disturb mode for individual apps.
- Profiles & Accounts: sync or remove account data, and manage cross-device sign-ins and cloud service permissions.
- Location: control app location permissions and view recent location access history.
- Privacy: manage app permissions, ad preferences, and access records for sensitive data such as the camera and microphone.
- Accessibility: enable assistive features such as screen readers, captions, and magnification to support special accessibility needs.
- Security: set profile lock types, enable Google Play Protect, and manage emergency security responses.
- Apps: view app storage usage, permission status, and default app settings.
- Assistant & Voice: Adjust Google Assistant wake words, voice match, and smart home integration.
- System: perform system update, backup and restore operations, multi-device connectivity, and system-level power-saving strategies.
- Google Account: manage account-linked Google services such as Search, Maps, and Ads.

Trademark statement

- Google, Android, Google Play, and Google Maps are trademarks of Google LLC.

Scene Mode*

Wash Mode*

- Activation: To enter Wash Mode, tap the scenario mode function button in the drop-down shortcut menu or use voice command.
- System responses: When Wash Mode is activated, all windows, sunroof, and boot lid automatically close, and the child protection lock is enabled. The status of relevant systems is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen.
- For conveyor car washes, tap Auto Car Wash and follow the on-screen instructions to enter Wash Mode. Once activated, the side mirrors automatically fold, and vehicle is shifted into Neutral.

CAUTION

- Ensure the vehicle speed is below 10 mph (15 km/h) before activating Wash Mode. If the speed exceeds 10 mph (15 km/h), the mode automatically exits.
- After tapping Auto Car Wash, press the brake pedal and shift to Drive to enter Wash Mode.
- For safety, remain inside the vehicle while it is on the conveyor.
- After the car wash is complete, shift out of the current gear to exit Wash Mode.

BYD Assistant

Google Assistant*

The vehicle is equipped with Google Assistant, which uses natural language processing technology to allow intuitive and convenient control. It supports

various entertainment interactions such as music and podcasts.

- When Google Assistant is set as the default voice assistant, you can activate it in three ways:
  - By saying the wake words "Hey Google".
  - By briefly pressing the steering wheel voice button.
  - By tapping the Google Assistant app icon.
- You can ask Google Assistant general questions, such as "What's on my calendar?", or interact with it to access communication, media, navigation, and vehicle control functions, such as "Read my messages", "Play some music", "Navigate home", or "Turn on the heater". Once a command is recognised, the system executes the corresponding action.
- If Google Assistant is not set as the default voice assistant, wake words and the steering wheel button cannot be used to activate it. In this case, you can either long-press the voice icon or navigate to **Application** → → **Assistant & voice** → **Digital assistant app** → **Default digital assistant app** to select the preferred default assistant.

BYD Assistant*

- BYD Assistant is an intelligent voice assistant that responds to your voice commands, such as requesting navigation, playing music/ radio making phone calls, and controlling in-vehicle devices.
- When BYD Assistant is set as the default voice assistant, you can activate it by saying the wake word "Hi, BYD", by briefly pressing the voice button on the steering wheel, or by tapping on the infotainment touchscreen.
- Your voice commands can be recognised after system wake-up. Then you can give voice commands such as "Go home" (set a quick location first), "Play music", "Make a call (requires access to the contact list and connection to the phone via Bluetooth)", "Set the temperature to 23 degrees". Once a command is recognised, the system executes the corresponding action.
- If BYD Assistant is not set as the default voice assistant, wake words and the steering wheel button cannot be used to activate it. In this case, you can either long-press the voice icon or navigate to **Application** → → **Assistant & voice** → **Digital assistant app** → **Default digital assistant app** to select the preferred default assistant.

Gestures and Responses

Gestures to interact with the system include:

- Tapping: opens an application, selects a function, clicks an icon on the touchscreen, or types with the onscreen keyboard.
- Dragging: re-positions an icon, thumbnail, or preview. Drop when you reach the intended position.
- Swiping: is operational on homepage and app screens.
- Double-tapping: zooms in or displays the image in full-screen mode. Double-tap again to return.
- Spreading/Pinching: zooms in/out an image.

- Swiping left/right with three fingers: regulates A/C fan speed.
- Swiping up/down with three fingers: regulates A/C temperature.
- Swiping down from the top of the touchscreen: opens the shortcut menu.
- Swiping up from the bottom of the touchscreen: opens the task management centre.
- Sliding from the left/right of the touchscreen: returns to the last screen.

Bluetooth

Setting up the connection

1. On Bluetooth Call screen, tap **Connect**.
2. Tap **Available devices** to search.
3. Pair an available device, and make sure the paring code displayed on your phone is consistent with the code on the touchscreen.
4. Set Bluetooth when connection is complete.

Making a Bluetooth call

Go to the dialling screen when Bluetooth is connected.

- Tap **Contacts**, **Call log**, and **Missed calls**, or use dial keypad to make a call.
- Slide the call card upwards or tap any empty space to minimise the dialling screen.

OTA Update*

- The vehicle supports over-the-air (OTA) updates. You can update your software to the latest in → → **System** → **Version Update**.
- When available, new updates are prompted on the infotainment touchscreen. You can update immediately when the new version is available or schedule an update based on your vehicle usage.

CAUTION

- Do not move the vehicle during the update.
- Before the update, ensure that the vehicle is parked safely in Park gear with network connection successfully established.
- Ensure the vehicle has a high SOC before starting the update.
- Do not install any third-party devices in the on-board diagnostics port before or during the update.
- Make sure the vehicle has enough battery power before the update, as it cannot be charged or discharged during the process.
- During the update, vehicle functions are not available except the following: locking/unlocking with smart key or microswitch, interior lights, hazard warning light, and window controls.
- If the update fails, try again. If the retry fails, contact BYD customer service or a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for assistance.

My Car*

My Car includes vehicle control which consists of shortcut control and 3D vehicle model control*.

- Shortcut control: Operate vehicle functions via the side shortcut bar or

the bottom card shortcut, enabling one-tap control.

- 3D vehicle model control*: Tap hotspot areas on the vehicle model to control including sunshades, windows, boot lid*, and other features. Actual vehicle control functions depend on the vehicle's configuration.
- Body colour change: Switch the body colour by tapping the corresponding icon.
- The availability of applications depends on the vehicle's actual configuration.

Phone Projection*

Phone projection* allows you to connect a smartphone to the vehicle and interact with certain mobile apps on the infotainment touchscreen.

WARNING

- Drive safely. Avoid any possible distractions, or accidents could result.

REMINDER

- Make sure the vehicle is in Park with the infotainment system turned on, and allow time to set up the phone projection app before you start your drive.
- The initial setup process is to be completed on the phone or the infotainment touchscreen: check prompts on the phone for security information, accept privacy policies, and grant necessary permissions.
- Wired connections require a connection between a certified USB cable to the USB data transfer port on the vehicle.
- When connecting wirelessly, pair your phone and the vehicle via Bluetooth. It is better to keep your phone's Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and Location Services turned on in this process.
- For the connection to be stable, it is better to change the vehicle hotspot name to avoid name-related issues.
- Ensure your phone is in range of your mobile data network and has an active data plan.
- Availability of services shown varies by country and language, and subscriptions for services may be required.

Apple CarPlay

Connecting with a cable*

- **To activate the connection,** plug an iPhone to a USB data transfer port on the vehicle with a certified USB cable. Apple CarPlay is then connected. The phone projected is shown on the device list.
- **To deactivate the connection,** unplug the iPhone USB cable to stop Apple CarPlay. If you have chosen to enable wireless CarPlay, the phone and the vehicle pair automatically to allow for future wireless connections.

Connecting wirelessly*

- **To activate the connection,** do as follows.

  1. On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the Apple CarPlay app , and

pair your iPhone to the vehicle as prompted.

2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Apple CarPlay.

- **To deactivate the connection,** choose any of the following ways.
  - On the vehicle, turn off the vehicle hotspot.
  - Turn on vehicle Wi-Fi to let the vehicle hotspot off.
  - In the connected device list, tap **Delete** or **Disconnect** to disconnect the current device.
  - In the Bluetooth list, delete the device projected.
  - Connect the Bluetooth of the current device.
  - Turn off the vehicle.
  - On your phone, delete this CarPlay device.
  - Turn off your phone Wi-Fi.

REMINDER

- Note that stopping the current connection will not have other CarPlay devices connected automatically.

Reconnecting Apple CarPlay

- Disconnected wired Apple CarPlay will not automatically restore. You have to unplug and replug the USB cable for this purpose.
- Wireless Apple CarPlay, if abnormally disconnected, automatically try to reconnect.

Switching between Apple CarPlay and built-in infotainment system

- To exit the Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the BYD icon on Apple CarPlay's home screen.
- To access the Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the Apple CarPlay icon on the built-in infotainment system's application screen.
- When the connected device list has only one Apple CarPlay history, tapping the icon automatically activates the connection.
- When there are multiple device histories suitable for projection, tapping the Apple CarPlay icon navigates to the device list. Select the one you want to use.

Switching between devices

- To access the connected device list, tap the connected device icon on the shortcut menu or tap **Application** → → **Network & internet** → **Connected Devices**.
- The connected device list supports switching to wireless devices only. This means you get a prompt if selecting another wireless device, but you will need to unplug and replug the USB cable to switch to a wired device.
- If the phone is in wireless screen-mirroring mode, connecting its USB port only supports charging and will not trigger the switching prompt. but connecting that of another phone will.

Q&A

- **How do I know if my phone works with Android Auto?**
  - Use a phone that is in proper conditions. Apple CarPlay may often freeze on older iPhone models or earlier iOS versions.

- A smooth cellular network is necessary. Sluggish network connections could cause apps to lag.
- Apple CarPlay may disconnect by signal interference in a complex network environment.

- **How can I check the connection between my phone and the vehicle**
  - For wired connections, be sure to use the data transfer port, and preferably a MFi-certified or genuine iPhone cable.
  - For wireless connections, verify your phone settings:
    - Bluetooth has been turned on.
    - Wi-Fi has been turned on and Auto-Join of the vehicle hotspot toggled on.
    - Wireless Carplay has been selected at the very first Apple CarPlay connection. In case you do not know, navigate on your iPhone to **Settings** → **General** → **Carplay**, select the vehicle you want to reset, then tap **Forget This Car**. Delete your iPhone from the device list on the vehicle. Then reset Apple CarPlay.
  - In the event of MFi authentication chip issue or reading error, delete histories and reconnect. If the issue persist, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
  - The name of the vehicle's Bluetooth or hotspot must be unique.
    - Search on your phone for nearby Bluetooth and hotspots. Make sure that no other devices have the same name as the vehicle to prevent interference.
    - You can change the device name on the infotainment touchscreen by tapping → → → **Bluetooth** or **Network & internet**.
  - Make sure Siri is on.
  - Make sure Apple CarPlay is not restricted.

    If your iPhone is not detected by Apple CarPlay, navigate on the phone to **Settings** → **Screen Time** → **Content & Privacy Restrictions**. If **Content & Privacy Restrictions** is on, tap **Allowed Apps & Features** to make sure that Apple CarPlay is enabled.
  - If Apple CarPlay is disconnected by turning the vehicle hotspot off, wireless reconnection cannot be performed within 10 minutes. Try after that.
  - You can restart by forgetting history settings:

    On your iPhone, navigate to **Settings** → **General** → **Carplay**, select the vehicle you want to reset, then tap **Forget This Car**. In the meantime, delete this phone from the vehicle's device list.
  - If the wireless connection fails after a wired connection is ended by unplugging the USB cable, clear CarPlay device information on your iPhone or restart the phone.
- For available regions of Apple CarPlay, visit https://www.apple.com/ios/feature-availability/#apple-carplay.

Android Auto

Connecting with a cable

- **To activate the connection,** plug an Android Auto-compatible phone to one of the vehicle's USB data transfer ports with a certified USB cable and set up as prompted.

- **To deactivate the connection,** unplug the USB cable or. Alternatively, you can end the connection or delete the projected phone in **Connected Devices**.

  1. Plug a smartphone to a USB data transfer port on the vehicle with a certified USB cable.
  2. Follow the on-screen instructions to set up Android Auto.

Connecting wirelessly

- **To activate the connection,** do as follows.

  1. On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the Android Auto icon , and pair your smartphone to the vehicle as prompted.
  2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Android Auto.

- **To deactivate the connection,** choose any of the following ways.
  - On the vehicle, turn off the vehicle hotspot.
  - Turn on vehicle Wi-Fi to let the vehicle hotspot off.
  - In the connected device list, tap **Delete** or **Disconnect** to disconnect the current device.
  - In the Bluetooth list, delete the device projected.
  - Turning Bluetooth on the vehicle or Wi-Fi on the phone off may stop projection.
  - Turn off the vehicle.
  - On your phone, delete this Android Auto device.

Reconnecting Android Auto

- Disconnected wired Android Auto will not automatically restore. You have to unplug and replug the USB cable for this purpose.
- Wireless Android Auto, if abnormally disconnected, automatically try to reconnect.

Switching between Android Auto and in-vehicle infotainment system

- To exit from Android Auto, tap on Android Auto interface.
- To go back to Android Auto, tap the Android Auto icon on the built-in infotainment system's application screen.
- When the connected device list has only one Android Auto history, tapping the icon automatically activates the connection. Connection prompts will be given if projection conditions are not met.
- When there are multiple device histories suitable for projection, tapping the Android Auto icon navigates to the device list. Select the one you want to use.

Switching between devices

- You can switch between wireless Android Auto devices in the connected device list and get a switching prompt after selecting another device.
- However, this step does not work for switching to a wired device, which requires unplugging and replugging the USB cable.
- If the phone is in wireless screen-mirroring mode, connecting its USB port only supports charging and will not trigger the switching prompt. but connecting that of another phone will.

Q&A

- **Android Auto not working**

- Make sure your phone supports Google service.
- Check if the phone operation system supports Android Auto.
  - Common Android Auto compatible devices are Android phones running Android 11.0 or later versions. Consult your phone maker for compatibility.
  - Android Auto is not supported on phones running Android (Go edition).
- Verify that your phones has the latest version of Android Auto app.
  - Search for Android Auto in phone Settings, then go to the Android Auto screen to view the version.
  - If Android Auto cannot be found, search for it in Google Play to download or update.
- Check if the connection between your phone and the vehicle is working normally.
  - For wired connections, use a good USB cable to connect the phone and the data transfer port.
  - For wireless connections, make sure Bluetooth and Wi-Fi are enabled on your phone and so do the vehicle Bluetooth and hotspot.

- **What should I do if Android Auto cannot be reconnected?**

  Try the following steps:

  - If you are using a wired connection, change to a genuine USB cable of the phone.
  - For a wireless connection, change the vehicle hotspot name (→ **Bluetooth** or **Network & internet**) or turn off the Bluetooth and Wi-Fi on the phone and the vehicle, then turn them back on.
  - Restart your phone and the vehicle infotainment system.
  - Delete and reconnect your phone as follows:

    1. Forget previously connected devices on the phone: Go to your Android phone's settings, then navigate to or search for Android Auto settings (on Google phones for example, **Settings** → **Connected devices** → **Connection preferences** → **Android Auto**).
    2. Tap **Previously connected cars**, then the three-dot menu button, and select **Forget all cars**.
    3. On the vehicle infotainment touchscreen, go to → **Network & internet** → **Connected Devices**, and then delete the device you want.
    4. Delete your phone from **Bluetooth Settings**.
    5. Reactivate the connection between the phone and the vehicle.

- **Causes to unstable Android Auto connections**
  - For wired Android Auto, typical causes are:
    - Unstable data transmission due to low-quality USB cable
    - Data transmission failure of USB port on the side of the vehicle
    - Data transmission failure of USB port on the side of the phone
    - Unstable connections due to BC1.2 incompatibility of the vehicle USB port

- Unstable connections due to an old version of Android Auto on the phone
- Strong vehicle vibration on rugged roads

- For wireless Android Auto, they include:
  - Hotspot turned off on the vehicle or Wi-Fi off on the phone
  - Complex network environments or weak signals (for example, when multiple Wi-Fi transmitters are operating simultaneously, frequency interference may occur with the vehicle hotspot).
  - Poor cellular reception (for example, in a basement or mountainous area)
  - Too old version of Android Auto on the phone (the latest version recommend)
  - Multiple BYD vehicles nearby with identical hotspot names
  - Faulty or malfunctioning Bluetooth or Wi-Fi module on the phone or the vehicle

- **Apps not available on Android Auto**
  - Not all apps on your phone are compatible with Android Auto, so some of them may not be displayed on the user interface.
  - Mobile network influences app presence or usage on Android Auto. Some apps cannot be opened without mobile network connections.
  - Given the feature or permission differences of apps between Android Auto and the phone, please consult the app providers if you have questions on app usage.

REMINDER

- Android Auto is integrated into phones with Android 10 and above. You do not need to download it.
- For wired or wireless connection, your phone might ask you to update Android Auto before you continue.
- Android Auto connections require the use of Bluetooth on both your phone and the vehicle, which could disconnect other already connected Bluetooth devices.
- Wireless Android Auto connections reply on the use of Wi-Fi on your phone, which could interrupt Wi-Fi connections on your phone.
- Wireless Android Auto connections reply on the use of vehicle hotspot, which could interrupt Wi-Fi connections on the vehicle. If Wi-Fi remains needed, turn on Wi-Fi again and try to reconnect it. (Performance may vary across systems.)
- For Android Auto compatibility, visit Google website: http://www.android.com/auto/

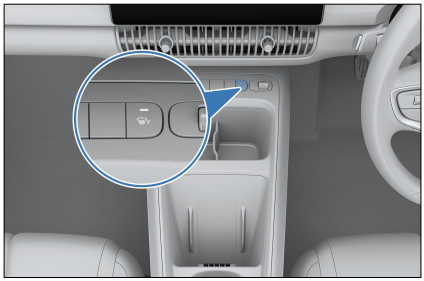
Trademark statement

- Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.
- Android and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.

A/C System

A/C Buttons

- Windscreen defrost



A/C Operation Interface

Front A/C Operation Interface



1	A/C interface
2	A/C settings
3	A/C ON/OFF
4	Auto mode
5	A/C button
6	Ventilator
8	Windscreen defrost
9	Defroster for rear window & side mirrors*
10	Max cooling
11	Driver's temperature control
12	Air distribution
13	Fan speed control

7	Circulation mode	14	Front passenger's temperature control

A/C Settings

- A/C Auto Mode
  - Two options are available: ECO and Comfort.
- Remote A/C Schedule
  - Tap this button to set the time for remote A/C running.
- Auto internal circulation upon parking
  - Tap this button to enable this setting.
  - Tap this button a second time to disable it.
- Auto Fan Speed Reduction During Bluetooth Calls
  - Tap this button to enable this setting.
  - Tap this button a second time to disable it.

Function Definitions

A/C ON/OFF

- Tap this button to disable the A/C if it is ON.
- Tap this button to enable the A/C if it is OFF.

Auto mode

- Tap the auto button, its indicator lights up on the front A/C panel and the auto mode is activated with the fan speed and air distribution being adjusted automatically.
- The vehicle exits fully-auto control once fan speed or air distribution is changed, with all functions but those that have been operated remain in auto mode.

A/C (cooling/heating)

- Tap this button to turn on the A/C (cooling/heating). The icon lights up and cooling or heating begins. Tap this button again to turn off the A/C compressor. The icon goes out and the compressor stops working.

Max cooling

- Tap this button to switch the A/C to the maximum cooling control mode. The compressor is turned on, the temperature is set to "Lo", the fan speed is set to the maximum, the recirculation mode is activated, and air is directed to face level. Tap this button again to enter AUTO mode.

Windscreen defrost

- Tap this button to enter the windscreen defrost mode, distributing air to the windscreen. The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel lights up.
- Tap this button again to deactivate and exit the windscreen defroster control mode. The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel turns off.

Defroster for rear window and side mirrors*

- Tap this button, the electric heating elements inside the rear window and side mirrors will make the window and mirrors clear. The defroster is automatically deactivated after 15-minute inactivity of the button.
- Tap this button again to disable the function.
- This function is not to be used to dry raindrops or melt snow.

WARNING

- Do not touch the side mirrors when the defroster is activated, because their surfaces will be hot.
- When cleaning the inner side of the rear window, take care not to scratch or damage electric heating wires or junctions.

Ventilator

- Tap this button to activate A/C ventilation control. The outlet air is natural air, and the fan speed is 1 by default without cooling or heating.
- Tap this button again to stop ventilation.

Temperature control

- Tap the upside arrow or slide it down to increase the temperature. Tap the downside arrow or slide it up to lower the temperature.
- "Lo"/"Hi" is displayed when the temperature is set to the lowest/ highest value.

Fan speed control

Tap the suitable fan speed level button to set the speed at a desired level. A higher level indicates a higher fan speed and airflow.

Circulation mode

- Tap this button. Then is displayed, indicating that the circulation mode is recirculation.
- Tap this button for the second time and then is displayed, indicating that the circulation mode is fresh air mode.

Air distribution

- Air distribution mode
  - On the infotainment touchscreen, tap to select the desired air distribution mode.
  - You can turn on up to three air distribution modes at a time.
- The buttons are defined as follows:

Blowing face : Air flows to the face level.

Blowing legs : Air flows to the foot level.

Defrost : Air flows to the windscreen and side windows.

Operating Tips

- To quickly cool down the interior after long exposure to sunlight, drive for a few minutes with the windows open to exhaust hot air and speed up A/C cooling.
- To speed up cooling, adjust the temperature to "Lo" and use the recirculation mode for a few minutes.
- If the A/C performance does not meet expectations, it is recommended to activate the AUTO mode. In this mode, the system automatically adjusts the temperature, air distribution, and fan speed to maintain passenger comfort.
- Make sure that the air intake grille in front of the windscreen is not blocked by, for example, leaves or snow.
- Avoid blowing cool air onto the windscreen in humid weather. The inner and outer temperature difference can cause glass fogging.
- Keep the space under the front seats clear to improve air circulation.
- In cold weather, run the fan at high speed for one minute to remove snow or moisture from the intake passage and reduce fogging.

- Use recirculation mode for a few minutes for quick heating in cold weather, and switch to fresh air mode to prevent fogging after cabin is heated up.
- In dusty or windy driving conditions, close all windows, switch on the recirculation mode, and turn on the A/C.
- In heating mode, press the compressor control button to light up the button (turning on the compressor), which can reduce airflow moisture.
- In the ventilation mode, the system introduces the natural wind from the outside, which is suitable for spring and autumn.

REMINDER

- About A/C odours:
  - It is normal that there may be a damp or musty smell just after the A/C is turned on. This is because, during A/C operation, condensation tends to accumulate on the evaporator, which can easily absorb unfiltered substances such as body sweat and smoke inside the vehicle. The moisture on the evaporator surface provides a favorable environment for bacterial growth, which may lead to unpleasant odours over time.
- How to prevent A/C odours:
  - Turn off the A/C and ventilate with natural air before leaving the vehicle parked to keep the air inside the vehicle relatively dry.
  - Inspect, clean, or replace the filter regularly.
  - Keep the cabin clean.

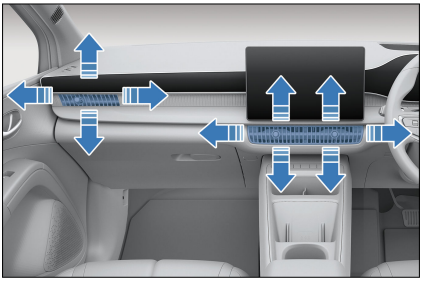
REMINDER

- If the odour does not reduce after the above operations, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- To reduce A/C odours, if the A/C was on before the vehicle was powered off and locked, the A/C blower may automatically run for a while after locking. This is a normal condition designed to dry the condensation on the evaporator surface and prevent mold growth that can cause odours.

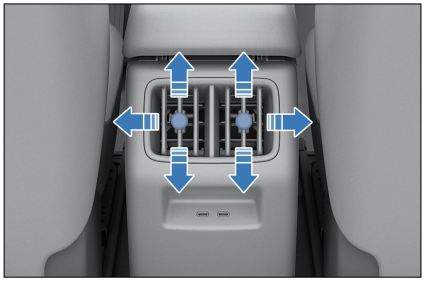
Vents

- Toggle the slat up/down/left/right to adjust the outlet angle of air flow.
- Slide the slat to adjust the outlet angle of air flow or open/close the vent.

Front vents



Rear vents



BYD App

About BYD App*

- BYD app is a mobile application of Internet of Vehicle (IoV) independently developed by BYD. It allows you to control the vehicle remotely and check vehicle conditions, delivering cloud era experience of IoV.
- You can search for "BYD" in application markets such as Google Play and App Store to download and install BYD app.

Account Registration*

Once the app is installed, follow the on-screen instructions or the steps below to sign up and log in.

1. Open the app, then tap **Sign up** to go to the registration screen.
2. Enter the email address registered with the BYD authorised dealer, tap **Send email** to receive a verification code, and then enter the code in the app.
3. Set your password in password setting screen to complete the registration, and then the homepage is displayed.

CAUTION

- Provide the email address registered at the BYD authorised dealer, or registration will fail.
- In the app, select a country or region on upper right corner of the screen. The default setting depends on your phone setting. If it is not where you make the purchase, choose the right one, otherwise your data will not be accessible.

Vehicle Condition and Control*

The BYD App homepage provides information and controls of the vehicle.

- The homepage shows remaining driving range, SOC, vehicle error information, and status of vehicle driving, charging, A/C system, seat heater, seat ventilator, and tyre pressure.
- Tap the lock, unlock, light flashing and honking, or light flashing button to activate the corresponding feature.
- Turn on or off A/C on the app homepage, or tap the A/C card to access other settings, such as temperature regulation.
- At the bottom of the homepage, tap the icon of seats, doors and windows, or tyres to go to the associated screen and check their status.
- If you have multiple vehicles on an account, tap the vehicle name in the upper left corner of the screen to switch between vehicles.

CAUTION

- The phone and the vehicle must be connected to the Internet in order to use remote control from the app.

Individual Centre and Vehicle Management*

Open the BYD App and tap My Account to go to the individual centre.

- Tap the icon on the top right corner of the vehicle card to edit the vehicle name and license plate number.
- Account and security: gets back or changes password.
- Settings: sets message reception, automatic login, and other items.
- About Us: includes privacy policy and information to contact us and give feedback.

Storage

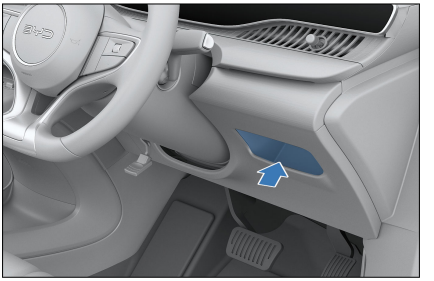
Door Bins

- There is a door bin on each door for storage of beverage bottles or small items.



Bill Box

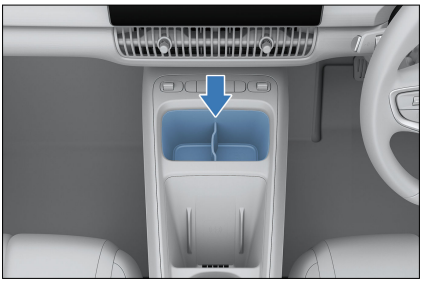
- Lift the bill box handle upward and outward to open the bill box.
- You can store invoices or business cards in the bill box. Do not place large or heavy objects inside, as this may prevent the box from closing properly.
- Keep the bill box closed while the vehicle is in motion.



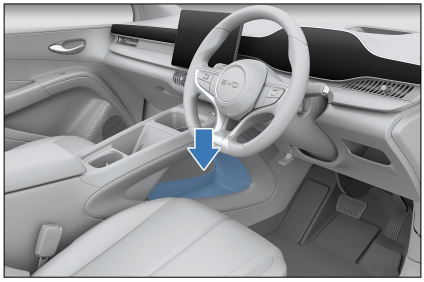
Glove Box

Front Storage Compartment

- The front storage compartment is located on the centre console, and the middle baffle can be inserted and pulled, which can be used to place small items and also as a cup holder.



- The centre console storage compartment can be used for storage of small items.



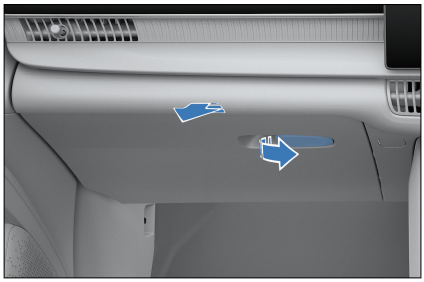
Glasses Case*

- Press the lid of the case to open it.



Glove Box

- Pull to open the glove box.
- Push the lid up to close it.



REMINDER

- To reduce risk of injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking, keep the glove box closed while driving.

Centre Console Cubby

- Pull up the lid of the centre console cubby in the direction shown in the illustration to open it.
- Snap down the lid to close it.

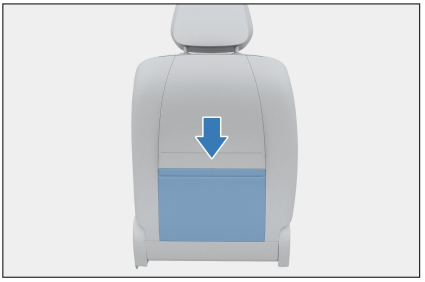


REMINDER

- To reduce risk of injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking, keep the centre console cubby closed while driving.

Seatback Pockets*

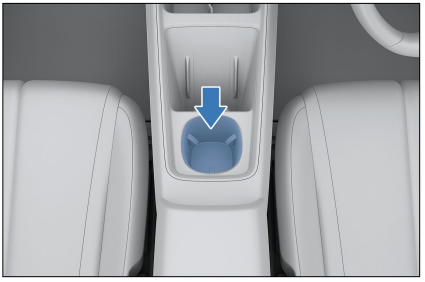
- There are seatback pockets* at the back of the front seats for storing magazines, newspapers, or similar objects.



Cup Holder

Front Cup Holder

- The front cup holder is located in the centre console.

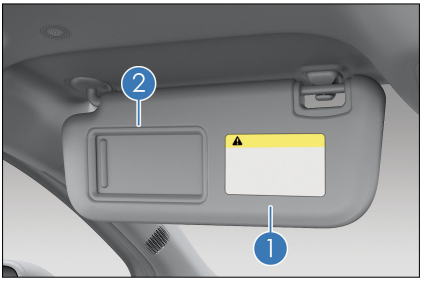


Other Devices

Sun Visor

① Sun Visor

- To block sunlight from the front, pull the sun visor down.
- To block sunlight from a side, remove the swivel sleeve from the fixed support and turn the visor towards the side window.



② Vanity mirror

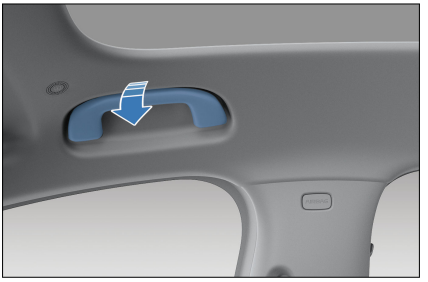
- Flip down the sun visor and slide the cover to use the mirror.

REMINDER

- Correct use of the sun visor improves driving safety and comfort.

Grab Handles

- Pull the grab handle down for use. The handle returns to its original position when released.



CAUTION

- Do not hang any heavy objects from the grab handles.

USB Ports

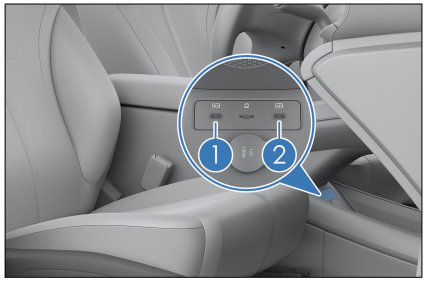
Front-row USB ports

- There are two ports installed in the lower layer of the auxiliary console.

① Type-C charge port

② Type-C data transmission/charge port

- The ports can be used only when the ignition is on.



- The infotainment system is compatible with USB storage devices up to 128GB. It is not compatible with some USB devices on the market.

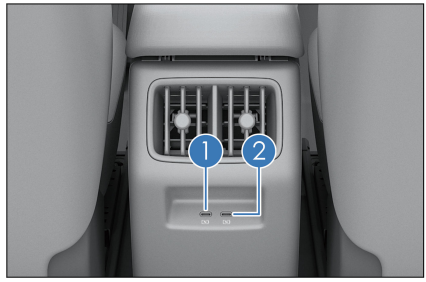
CAUTION

- It is recommended to use USB storage devices up to 128GB with FAT32 format.
- Do not use substandard or special USB storage devices to avoid damaging the infotainment system or data in the USB device.

Rear USB Ports*

- The rear USB ports are located behind the centre console cubby.

①② Type-C charge port



- The ports can be used only when the ignition is on.

SD Card Slot

- The lower layer of the auxiliary dashboard is equipped with a dedicated SD card slot.
- The infotainment system supports TF card (also called Micro-SD card) ranging from 32 to 128GB with a Class 10 speed rating or higher and FAT32 format.



CAUTION

- Insert the card correctly.
- When the card is inserted, a red flashing dot on the driving recorder's interface* indicates successful recognition and normal operation. Any issue with card recognition or video recording prompts corresponding

CAUTION

notifications on the infotainment touchscreen.

- Incompatible TF cards may result in failure to write and save files.
- It is recommended to use a USB storage device with a partition format of FAT32 and a memory of 32G.
- Format non-FAT32 cards before using them, or the system may fail to recognise them.
- Before removing the TF card, stop recording or shut down the infotainment system, or video files may be damaged.

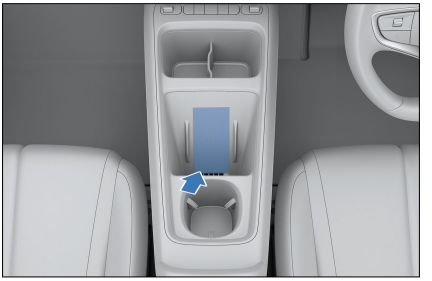
On-Board Power Supply

- The standby power supply can be used for accessories with a working current of less than 10 A and electrical power of less than 120 W.
- The 12 V auxiliary power supplies power to vehicle accessories.
- The 12 V auxiliary power is available only when the ignition is on. Lift the cover to use it.



Wireless Phone Charger*

- The mobile phone wireless charging area is located on the centre console. To activate/deactivate wireless charging, tap the wireless charging icon on the shortcut page after sliding down the top status bar on the infotainment touchscreen.
- After starting the vehicle, put the phone in the wireless charging area with the phone screen facing up. The phone automatically begins wireless charging, and a charging icon is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen.



- Wireless phone charging uses a coil to transmit electrical energy to a phone battery through electromagnetic wave induction so that the phone can be charged without a cable connection.

CAUTION

- To use the vehicle wireless charger, your phone must have wireless charging function.
- Ensure your smart key is more than 10 in. (25 cm) away from the wireless charger area when the wireless charger system is working.
- To avoid wireless charger dysfunction or even accidents, do not place coins, metal keys,

CAUTION

metal rings, or other articles containing metal (for example, the metal phone case) in the wireless charger area together with the phone.

- To avoid damage to the charger area, do not place heavy objects on it.
- If the phone wireless charger system is faulty and does not work properly, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- BYD will not assume any responsibility for any problems caused by improper use. If the product is disassembled or modified, the free warranty will be terminated.
- For safety reasons, do not leave an unattended phone being charged in the vehicle.
- For safety reasons, refrain from checking phone charging status while driving.
- If a metal item is found between the device and the charger during charging, remove the mobile phone immediately and wait for the metal item to cool down before removing to prevent burning.
- While charging, align the bottom of the phone with the vents of the wireless charging area to ensure a better charging experience.
- Prevent any fluid from coming into contact with the charger area, or the wireless charger will malfunction.

CAUTION

- Do not use flammable solvents such as oil, grease, or alcohol to clean the wireless charging area.
- Do not cover the wireless charging area with fabrics or objects while charging.
- Charging may stop at high temperatures, and will resume once the temperature returns normal.
- BYD makes no commitments for problems caused by external wireless charging coils (such as magnetic charging coils). Use with caution.
- To avoid burning cards with chips, such as NFC cards and bank cards, do not place them between the wireless charging area and the phone during charging.
- Before charging, placing an NFC-enabled phone on the NFC-integrated wireless charging area may activate the phone's digital wallet.
- When the ignition is switched on, activating the digital key will pause the phone's wireless charging. The wireless charging automatically resumes when activation is finished.

REMINDER

- Only one phone can be charged at a time.
- A phone case that is too thick may prevent charging.
- On bumpy roads, the wireless phone charging may

REMINDER

intermittently stop and then resume.

- Try to ensure that the surface on which a mobile phone is placed is parallel to the charging module. If the phone moves from the wireless charger area and stops charging, move it back.
- If the phone cannot be charged properly, ensure that there are no foreign objects in the wireless charger area, or wait for the wireless charger area to cool down before trying again. If it is still impossible to charge the phone, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- After power-off, if the phone is still charging and a front door is opened, the message "Please take your cell phone with you" is on the instrument cluster.
- The setting icon for wireless phone charger can be added or removed on the shortcut page of the infotainment touchscreen.
- For the purpose of compatibility, the in-vehicle wireless fast charging* module may be slower than the original charger provided by your phone's manufacturer.
- The wireless fast charging* power of your phone depends on that supported by the phone, while the in-vehicle fast charging* only supports up to 50 W.
- Certain phones may carry outdated charging programs that are not capable of fast charging*.

06 SERVICE AND MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Precautions..... 210
Regular Maintenance.....215
Self-Maintenance.....221

Maintenance Precautions

Maintenance Cycle and Items

Maintenance Plan

- The maintenance plan is designed to ensure stable driving, failure reduction, safe and economical driving.
- The maintenance schedule lists all the necessary items to keep the vehicle in optimum condition at all times.
- The items listed are important and need to be performed according to the specified time interval.
- Hoses with any degradation or damage should be replaced immediately. Rubber hoses (for systems such as cooling, heating, and braking systems) must be checked by professional technicians according to the maintenance schedule.

Maintenance Instructions

The vehicle must be maintained according to the regular maintenance schedule.

If the vehicle is operated primarily under one or more of the following special conditions, some maintenance items need to be performed more frequently.

- Road conditions
  - Muddy, sandy, or snowy roads
  - Dusty roads
- Driving conditions
  - Use of towed trailer, camping trailer, or roof rack.
  - Within 5 miles (8 km), repeated short distances are driven and the outside temperature is below freezing.
  - Long idling and/or long distance driving at low speed, for example, using the vehicle as a police car, taxis or using it for transporting goods.

Maintenance Schedule

First maintenance:

Maintain your vehicle based on the following time and mileage (total mileage) intervals, whichever comes first.

Maintain your vehicle at 6 months or 5,000 km (HEV mileage) for the first maintenance, whichever comes first.

First maintenance items include vehicle basic maintenance, replacement of engine oil and oil filter, and check of engine idle speed and crankcase ventilation system.

Routine maintenance

Routine maintenance include vehicle basic maintenance, maintenance of other items, and engine maintenance.

Vehicle basic maintenance: After the first maintenance, carry out the basic maintenance according to the following maintenance interval and mileage (total mileage), whichever comes first.

Maintenance Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Cooling pipe damage and connecting part tightness	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).

Maintenance Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Brake friction block and brake discs	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Chassis screws	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Brake pedal and EPB switch	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Brake piping and hoses	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Steering wheel and tie rod	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Drive shaft boot	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Ball pin and dust boot	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Front and rear suspensions	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Front and rear wheel alignment	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Tyre wear	Check during maintenance and rotate the tyres when necessary. Under severe driving conditions, check more frequently and rotate when necessary.
Foreign materials on or ablation of the EPS GND point (applies to both CEPS (brushed and brushless motors) and REPS)	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
EPS connector looseness and connector pin ablation (applies to both CEPS (including brushed and brushless motors) and REPS)	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
EPS ECU corrosion (applies to both CEPS (including brushed and brushless motors) and REPS)	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Check the door brakes. Remove the dust from the lever with a damp soft cloth, and apply 0.3–0.8 g of	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).

Maintenance Item	Time/Mileage Interval
grease to the lever, riveting joint, and rotating shaft	
Bonnet lock and fasteners	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Coolant level in expansion tank	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Brake fluid check	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Vehicle module DTCs (to be cleared after recording)	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
High-voltage battery tray, impact bar, shield, crash valve, thermal insulation cotton, and mounting torque	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Powertrain leaks or bumps	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Fasteners of the high-voltage distribution box, DC charging distribution box, and similar parts	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Loose high-voltage wiring harnesses or connectors and connector pin ablation	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Deformation of or oil/fluid stains on the high-voltage module	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Foreign materials on or ablation of charging connector interface	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Wading marks on high-voltage parts	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Vehicle module software update (update if any)	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Lamp and LED lighting	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Headlight dimming	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Initial down tilt of dipped beam	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).

Maintenance Item	Time/Mileage Interval
HEPA filter	Check every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km). In case of harsh environment or reduced air outlet, check in time and replace the A/C filter when necessary.
Lock nut torque of wiper arm	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Vehicle glass glue attachment	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Air leakage of exhaust pipe joint	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Bumps on the appearance of the three-way catalytic convertor	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Fuel tank cap, fuel lines, and connections	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).
Charcoal canister	Replace every 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km).

Other item maintenance: Comply with the following maintenance interval and mileage (total mileage), whichever comes first.

Maintenance Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Sealing of high-voltage battery pack	Check during maintenance and replace if necessary every two years or 24,000 miles (40,000 km).
Air conditioner coolant* replacement	Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every six years or 62,000 miles (100,000 km).
High-voltage battery coolant* replacement	Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every six years or 62,000 miles (100,000 km).
Engine coolant and drive motor coolant (Naturally aspirated engine) replacement	Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every six years or 62,000 miles (100,000 km).
Brake fluid replacement	Check during maintenance and replace every two years or 24,000 miles (40,000 km)
EHS special gear oil replacement	Check the amount of EHS gear oil during maintenance; replace the oil and the filter

Maintenance Item	Time/Mileage Interval
	element assembly every four years or 40,000 miles (60,000 km).
Capacity test and correction	Check every 6 months or 48,000 miles (72,000 km).

Engine maintenance: Engine maintenance should comply with the following maintenance interval and mileage (HEV mileage), whichever comes first.

Maintenance Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Engine oil and oil filter (Naturally aspirated engine) replacement	Replace every 12 months or 6,000 miles (10,000 km) after the first maintenance.
Crankcase ventilation system (PCV valve and ventilation hose)	Replace every 12 months or 6,000 miles (10,000 km) after the first maintenance.
Engine idle speed	Replace every 12 months or 6,000 miles (10,000 km) after the first maintenance.
Spark plug	Replace at 42 months or 21,000 miles for the first time, and every 48 months or 24,000 miles afterwards.
Fuel Filter (integrated into the fuel pump)	Replace every 120 months or 10,000 miles (150,000 km).
Air filter element replacement	Replace at 18 months or 1,000 miles for the first time, and every 24 months or 12,000 miles afterwards; Check under severe conditions of use and replace in advance if necessary.
Dust filter of charcoal canister replacement	Replace every two years or 20,000 miles (30,000 km), or upon frequent fuel nozzle auto shut-off during refueling.

REMINDER

- To keep the high-voltage battery in optimal condition, fully charge and discharge the vehicle regularly, at least every six months or 44,739 miles (72,000 km) for battery self-calibration. You can also contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for capacity testing and calibration.
- In following severe working conditions, it is recommended to shorten the routine mileage interval based on the actual situations to protect the vehicle.

REMINDER

- The vehicle travels at low temperatures (ambient temperature <41°F or 5°C) with short continuous driving time (less than 15 minutes) in HEV mode or often creeps (vehicle speed <6 mph or 10 km/h) for a long time.

Note:

- The maintenance intervals in the table are calculated starting from the purchase date.
- To keep the vehicle in the optimum state, follow the instructions below to operate the vehicle correctly.
  - Before the first maintenance, break in the vehicle in ECO mode with the use ratio of HEV mode not less than 50%.
  - After the first maintenance, the use ratio of HEV mode should not be less than 10%.
- The replacement time interval of the oil filter can be shortened according to the degree of fouling of the gasoline engine.
- Especially in cold weather, we recommend that users perform maintenance at half the standard interval (replacing only the engine oil and oil filter), i.e., every 5,000 km (HEV mileage) or every 6 months.
- Severe driving conditions refer to:
  - Frequent driving in dusty areas or frequent exposure to salt-laden air
  - Frequent driving on bumpy, puddled, or mountain roads
  - Driving in cold weather
  - Frequent and sudden braking
  - Frequent use of a towed trailer
  - Used as a taxi
  - Driving in congested urban areas at temperatures above 32°C for more than 50% of total travel time
  - Driving at speeds over 75 mph (120 km/h) at temperatures above 86°F (30°C) for more than 50% of total travel time
  - Frequent overloading
  - After a new engine has been installed under warranty, the first maintenance service should be performed within 5,000 km (HEV mileage) or 6 months of the replacement, whichever comes first, to change the engine oil and oil filter.

Regular Maintenance

Regular Maintenance

- Be sure to maintain the vehicle as per the maintenance schedule to allow it serve in the best working efficiency and reduce fault occurrence.
- Drivers can refer to the maintenance plan for scheduled maintenance intervals, depending on the odometer reading or time interval, whichever comes first.
- For overdue maintenance items, the same time interval should be used for maintenance.
- It is recommended that maintenance be performed in accordance with the standards and specifications of BYD Auto Co., Ltd., and by a local BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

- The maintenance schedule lists the maintenance items and travel time or distance based on the assumption that the vehicle is used as a normal means of transportation to carry passengers and goods that do not exceed the vehicle load limit.

CAUTION

- Please maintain the vehicle regularly according to the requirements in the Warranty and Maintenance Service Manual of BYD.

Vehicle Servicing

- Pay attention to vehicle performance, sound changes, and visual evidence that indicates service is required. Under any of the following circumstances, it is recommended to send the vehicle to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection or repair as soon as possible:
  - Motor start produces unusual noises.
  - Coolant remains overheated, stagnated or leaks.
  - Motor jams and produces unexpected noise.
  - The motor runs with excessive vibration.
  - The motor fails to get started.
  - Electric assembly leaks oil.
  - Electric assembly emits odours.
  - Power declines significantly.
  - Water leaks from under the vehicle (A/C condensate is normal).
  - Tyre deflates; tyres make excessive noises at turns; tyre wear is uneven.
  - Vehicle leads to one side when driving straight on a flat surface.
  - Suspension unit movement leads to unusual noises.
  - Loss of braking effect; sponge feeling on the brake pedal; pedal almost contacts the floor; vehicle leads to one side when braking.
  - Motor coolant temperature remains high.
  - Battery capacity decreases significantly.
  - High battery temperature or overheat protection persists, or there is no power output.
  - "Please check the engine system" is displayed on the instrument cluster.
  - There is obvious abnormal vibration or noise in the engine compartment.
  - The engine leaks oil or water.
  - The vehicle exhausts blue smoke or thick black smoke.
  - A/C system fails to blow cold or hot air during refrigeration or heating.

WARNING

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injuries.

Vehicle Corrosion Prevention

The most common causes of vehicle corrosion are:

- The underbody of the vehicle is covered in salt, dust, or moisture.

- The vehicle or some of its parts are exposed to high humidity and high temperature for a long time.
- The paint layer or underlayer is scratched by minor collision or by stones and gravel.

The following rules should be observed to prevent vehicle corrosion:

- Wash the vehicle frequently.
  - If driving on saline roads in winter or living in coastal areas, wash the landing area of the vehicle at least once a month, and clean the chassis and hubcap with a high-pressure water jet or steam to reduce corrosion. Wash the chassis thoroughly after winter.
- Check vehicle paint and trims.
  - Any chip or crack found on the paint must be repaired immediately to prevent corrosion. If fragments or cracks peel off from the metal surface, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for repair.
- Check cabin interior.
  - Moisture and dust buildup under the carpet can cause corrosion. Check the undersides of carpets frequently to make sure these areas are dry.
  - Special care should be taken when the vehicle is transporting chemicals, detergents, fertilisers, salt, and other substances. Such substances should be kept in appropriate containers for transportation. If spillage or leakage is found, clean immediately and keep dry.
- Use mud flaps.
  - Mudguard protects vehicles in saline areas or on gravel roads. The bigger and closer to the ground the fender liner, the better.
- Park in a well-ventilated and dry area.

Paint Maintenance Tips

- Clean the vehicle in time.
- Do not perform secondary painting if there is no obvious scratches on the finish, so as to prevent mismatch or colour incompatibility.
- If the vehicle is to sit for a long period, parked it in a garage or a well-ventilated place, and in particular, use winter car cover in winter months. Choose a shady place for parking temporarily.
- Prevent strong impacts, knocks, or scratches on the paint. If the paint is scratched, dented or if it peels, it should be repaired in time, preferably by professional auto beauty provider.
- Do not touch the paint with a greasy hand or cloth. Do not place greasy tools or rub with organic solvents on the vehicle body so as to avoid chemical reactions.
- The vehicle must be waxed once a month or whenever water resistance performance of the vehicle degrades and be taken to an auto beauty provider for maintenance once every three months.
- High quality polish and wax must be used. If body finish is severely weathered, use a car cleaning polish in addition to the wax. Carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions and precautions. Chrome finish should be polished and waxed as well as painted finish.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle is repainted and placed in a high-temperature

⚠ CAUTION

paint waxing workshop, the vehicle's plastic bumper must be removed to avoid damage caused by high temperatures.

Exterior Cleaning

- The vehicle must be cleaned in time under the following circumstances, which can cause peeling of paint layer or corrosion of the vehicle body and parts:
  - Driving along the coast.
  - Driving on roads with anti-freeze or de-icing salt.
  - Driving on roads covered with coal tar.
  - Resin, bird droppings, or insect carcasses are stuck on the vehicle.
  - Driving in areas with a large amount of smoke, soot, dust, iron filings, or chemicals.
  - The vehicle is visibly soiled by dust or mud.
  - After raining.

⚠ CAUTION

- Before washing the vehicle, enable the washing mode* and ensure all doors, windows, panels, covers, auto wipers, and the boot lid are closed, and fold side mirrors.
- Make sure the charge port is securely closed before and during the wash.
- Do not wash the vehicle in hot and direct sunlight conditions.

Manual Vehicle Washing

Before washing the vehicle, ensure the water temperature does not exceed 60°C.

1. Hose off loose dirt, including all mud or road salts at the bottom of the vehicle and on wheel pits.
2. Wash the vehicle with a specialty neutral detergent according to its product instruction. Do not use strong alkaline or acidic cleaners, as well as volatile substance (gasoline, kerosene, or solvent). Soak a soft cloth with cleaning solution and gently wipe it down along the direction of the water flow. Do not wipe in a circular motion or horizontally.
3. Rinse well—Dried washing agent forms markings. After washing the vehicle in hot weather, rinse all parts properly.
4. Dry the vehicle with a clean soft towel to prevent stay water marks. In order to prevent scratching, do not rub or apply excessive force on the paint.

Washing with high-pressure washer

- When using a high-pressure washer to wash the vehicle, follow the instructions below:
  - Keep the water jet nozzle at least 20 inches (50 cm) away from the vehicle surface.
  - The recommended pressure is below 60 bar, and it must not exceed 100 bar.
  - Use a fan-shaped or mist spray pattern when cleaning with a water jet. Do not use a direct high-pressure jet.
  - Keep the nozzle in constant motion during rinsing. Avoid staying stationary in one spot.
  - Do not use a high-pressure water jet to clean the underside of the vehicle.

- Do not clean the front compartment directly with a high-pressure water jet. Use low-pressure water and a mild cleaner instead.
- Avoid prolonged rinsing of the lower windscreen to prevent water from entering the AC intake, which can damage the system.
- Avoid aim the sealing strips directly with high-pressure water, as this may cause water leakage into the vehicle interior.
- Avoid direct high-pressure washing of sensors (e.g., laser radars, cameras), as this may cause damage.

REMINDER

- Do not use any alkaline washing powder, soapy water, detergents, de-waxing detergents or volatile substance (gasoline, kerosene, or solvent).
- When cleaning the lights, avoid using alcohol-based products (like alcohol and windscreen washer fluid), ketones (such as lacquer thinner and insect remover), or other chemical solvents (including gasoline, thinner, and carbon tetrachloride), as these can cause the light casings to crack.
- It is recommended that vehicles travelling in coastal or heavily polluted areas be washed once a day.
- Do not use blades or gasoline to remove hard dirt from the vehicle body. The plastic wheel trim is easily damaged by organic matter. If any organic matter splashes on the vehicle trim, remove it with water and check whether the trim is damaged. Replace any seriously damaged plastic wheel trim in a timely manner. Otherwise, the

REMINDER

trim may fall from the wheel during vehicle movement and cause an accident.

- Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to scrub the bumper.
- Clean polished metal parts with carbon cleaner and wax them regularly for protection.
- Be careful when cleaning the chassis to avoid cutting hands.

Automatic Vehicle Washing

When using an automatic car wash, note that certain types of brushes, unfiltered rinse water, or specific wash programs may scratch the paint surface. Such scratches can reduce the gloss and durability of the paint, especially on dark-coloured vehicles. Before washing, consult the service provider or refer to equipment instructions to confirm which washing program is safest for your vehicle's paint.

CAUTION

- Make sure to disable the AVH function before entering an automatic car wash.
- Fold the side mirrors before washing, and unfold them before driving.

Interior Cleaning

REMINDER

- Prevent direct water splash onto the dashboard, floor, or electrical components when washing the

REMINDER

vehicle, because water ingress may cause electrical faults.

- To prevent corrosion, do not wash the vehicle's floor with water.

Carpet

- Vacuum the carpet regularly.
- Clean the carpet regularly by scrubbing in a circular motion with a sponge or soft brush soaked in the suitable foaming detergent.
- Do not add the foam detergent into water and keep the carpet as dry as possible.

Seat Belts

- The seat belts can be cleaned with neutral soapy water or lukewarm water.
- Scrub the seat belts with a sponge or soft cloth. Check the seat belts for excessive wear, tear, or cut marks.

CAUTION

- Do not clean the seat belt with colourant or bleach. These substances may decrease the seat belt's strength.
- Do not use any seat belt that is not dry.

Doors and Windows

- Doors and windows can be cleaned with any ordinary detergent.
- Check the door brakes regularly. If a door brake lever is found with visible dust accumulation, wipe it with a wet soft cloth.

CAUTION

- When cleaning the inside of the rear windows, take care not to scratch or damage electric heating wires or junctions.

A/C Control Panel, Speakers, Dashboard, Control Panels, and Switches

- Clean the A/C panel, speakers, dashboard, control panels, and switches with a wet soft cloth.
- Wipe dust off gently with a clean soft cloth soaked in lukewarm water.

CAUTION

- Do not use organic substances (for example, solvents, kerosene, alcohol, and gasoline) or acid or alkali solutions. These chemicals can cause discolouration, staining, or flaking.
- Please confirm that the detergent or polishing agent to be used does not contain the above substances.
- If a new-type liquid car washer is used, do not splash it onto the interior surface of the vehicle, because it may contain the above substances. If there is any spillage, immediately clean it thoroughly.

Leather

- Leather trimmings can be cleaned with a neutral detergent for woolen.
- Use a soft cloth with a neutral detergent solution to wipe off the dust, and then use a clean, wet cloth to wipe the remaining detergent thoroughly.

- If leather gets wet, wipe it with a clean soft cloth and air dry it in a cool, ventilated place.
- For any questions about vehicle cleaning, please consult a local BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- If dirt cannot be cleaned off using a neutral detergent, clean it with a detergent that does not contain organic solvents.
- Do not clean leather with any organic material such as volatile oil, alcohol, gasoline, or acid-base solution, as these will cause discolouration.
- Do not clean leather with a nylon brush or synthetic fiber cloth, as these may scratch the fine patterns on the leather surface.
- Mold may grow on dirty leather trimmings. Special care must be taken to avoid oil stains, and trimmings must always be kept clean.
- Prolonged exposure to sunlight will cause leather to harden or shrink, so the vehicle should be parked in a shady and cool place, especially in the summer.
- In hot weather, the temperature inside the vehicle rises easily, so avoid placing vinyl or waxy items on the trimmings, as these may stick to leather in high temperatures.
- Improper cleaning of leather trimmings may cause discolouration or spots.

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance Precautions

- If maintenance is to be carried out by yourself, be sure to follow the correct steps specified in this section.
- Note that improper and incomplete maintenance will affect the performance of the vehicle.
- This section only instructs on simple maintenance items that can be done by the users themselves. However, there are many items that must be done by qualified technicians with special tools.
- Special care must be taken in maintaining vehicles to prevent accidental injuries. Make sure to obey the followings:

CAUTION

- Beware of short circuits, as some circuits and vehicle components carry high current or voltage.
- If coolant overflows, wipe it with a dry cloth or tissue to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint and add coolant in time.
- Only specified spark plug can be used. The use of other spark plug may result in engine performance loss or damage, or radio interference to other electric products.
- Do not reuse the spark plug by cleaning it or adjusting the spark plug gap.

CAUTION

- If brake fluid overflows, rinse it with water to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the air filter removed, otherwise, the engine will be excessively worn.
- When replacing wiper blades, do not allow the wipers to scratch the glass surface.
- Before closing the engine cover, check whether any tool or wipe cloth is left in the engine compartment.
- When the engine is running, keep hands, clothes and tools at a certain distance from the rotating fan. It is recommended to take off the watch, ring, or tie.
- The engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and spark plug cover are hot after driving. Do not touch them and be careful to operate. The engine oil and other fluid may be hot too.
- To prevent burns, do not remove or loosen the expansion tank cap or remove the water pump, if the engine is very hot.
- Do not smoke in or near the vehicle to avoid sparks or open flames that may cause fire.
- Ensure the vehicle is turned off when working around the electric fan or radiator grill. When the vehicle is powered on, if the engine coolant is hot or the A/C system is turned on, the electric fan may automatically start.
- Whether working inside or under the vehicle, always wear goggles to prevent objects or liquids from falling into eyes.

CAUTION

- Exercise caution while filling the brake fluid. If your skin or eyes are exposed to brake fluid, wash immediately with plenty water. Seek medical attention immediately if discomfort persists.

Checks

The following items should be checked according to usage or specified mileage:

- Coolant level: Check the expansion tank coolant level at each charge.
- Windscreen washer fluid: Check the residual amount of washer fluid in the reservoir monthly. In the case of frequent use, check at each charge.
- Windscreen wiper: Check wiper conditions monthly. Check for wear, cracking, or other damage whenever the wiper cannot clean effectively.
- Brake fluid level: Check the level monthly.
- Brake pedal: Check whether the brake pedal is operating properly.
- EPB switch: Check whether the switch is functional.
- Low-voltage battery: Check battery conditions and check for terminal corrosion monthly.
- A/C system: Check the operation of A/C units weekly.
- Tyres: Check tyre pressure monthly. Check for tread wear and embedded foreign bodies as well.
- Windscreen defrosters: Check the defroster vent every month when the heater or the A/C system is used.

- Lights: Check the condition of headlights, position lights, tail lights, high mount brake light, turn signals, rear fog lights, brake lights and license plate light monthly.
- Doors: Check whether the boot lid and all other doors (including rear doors) can be opened freely and locked securely.
- Horn: Check whether the horn is functioning properly.

REMINDER

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injury.

Combination Lights

Alignment of front combination lights

- Front combination lights are aligned before vehicle delivery. If the vehicle carries heavy load frequently, front combination lights may need to be realigned. It is recommended to have the front combination lights aligned by a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Fogging of lights

- Combination lights, tail lights, and turn signals on the side mirrors may become foggy after heavy rain or cleaning. This is similar to condensation on the side window during rain. It does not mean any problem with your vehicle.
- The lights are a relatively enclosed and narrow space. The temperature is very high when they light up (the mask and reflector could be burned and deformed easily), so they need heat dissipation. There are heat dissipation holes on the lamp housing for convection. The greater the temperature difference is, the more active the convection is. During the convection, the moisture in the air inevitably enters a lamp. Factors such as exposure to sunlight, convection, and bulb heating can cause the moisture in the air to condense into fog or water beads easily on the lamp surface at low temperatures. This is called fogging of lights.
- If fog presents inside the combination lights and inside the turn signal on the side mirror, it may be due to high air humidity or significant temperature difference between the vehicle and its surroundings. In that case, turn on the combination lights or turn signal while driving. The fog will evaporate after a short period of driving.
- If there is a noticeable amount of water inside the lights, it is recommended to drive the vehicle to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for maintenance.

Vehicle Storage

- If the vehicle needs to be parked for a long time (more than a month), the following preparations should be made. Proper preparation helps prevent degradation and ensure easy use of the vehicle. If possible, park the vehicle indoors.
- Refuel in time.
- Thoroughly clean and dry the body surface.
- Clean the interior of the vehicle to ensure that carpets and mats are completely dry.
- Put the vehicle in Park.
- If the vehicle needs to be stored for a long time, jack up the vehicle body to keep the tyres off the ground.

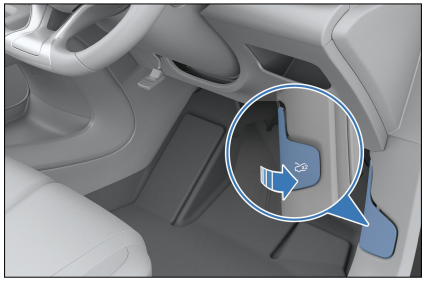
- Open one window slightly (if the vehicle is stored indoors).
- Disconnect the negative terminal of the low-voltage battery.
- Pad the front wiper arm with a folded towel or cloth to keep it out of contact with the windscreen.
- To reduce adhesion, apply silicone lubricant to all door and boot lid seals and apply body wax to the painted surface where they contact the seals.
- Cover the vehicle body with a breathable covering made of a "porous material", such as cotton. Non-porous materials, such as plastic sheeting, can build up moisture and damage the paint.
- If possible, start the engine for a while regularly (preferably once every month). If the vehicle has been parked for a year or more, go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for comprehensive maintenance.

Bonnet

Opening and Closing the Bonnet

Open the bonnet

1. Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are pulled up, as this may damage the bonnet's paint.
2. Pull the handle on the left under the dashboard twice. The bonnet unlocks and opens slightly.



3. Lift up the bonnet and support it with a stay bar.



Close the bonnet

1. Remove the stay bar. Lower the bonnet to about 30 centimeters above the front grille and release it, so that the fall locks it. Do not press the bonnet with hands to close it.
2. After closing the bonnet, check whether the latch is securely locked. If the bonnet can still be lifted slightly, it indicates that it is not locked correctly. Open the bonnet again and then close it correctly according to the above steps.

WARNING

- When closing the bonnet, confirm that nobody is within the range of the falling bonnet.
- Ensure that the bonnet is closed and locked firmly before driving. If the bonnet is not closed properly, it may suddenly open during

WARNING

driving, resulting in accidents and personal injuries.

- The correctly closed bonnet is level with the adjacent vehicle body.
- If the bonnet is not closed tightly when driving, stop immediately and close the bonnet to prevent accidents.

CAUTION

- Do not press the front of the bonnet. Heavy pressure may damage the bonnet, causing dents in the surface or bending the edges.
- Do not force down the bonnet or release it from a high position.

Engine

- If the engine is not started for a long time, the carbon tank will be saturated, causing the risk of fuel leakage, so the carbon tank needs to be desorbed regularly.
- If the vehicle is driven in EV mode for a long time, this function starts the engine and exits until the carbon tank load meets the requirements.

Engine Cylinder Cleaning

- In extremely cold areas, failure to start the engine may cause engine flooding. In this case, perform cylinder cleaning:

  1. When the OK indicator stays on, the working mode is EV, the vehicle is in ECO mode, and the engine is not running, switch from Park to Neutral.
  2. Engage EPB, press the brake and accelerator pedals to the deepest positions at the same time, and wait for several seconds to activate cylinder cleaning.

Engine Oil

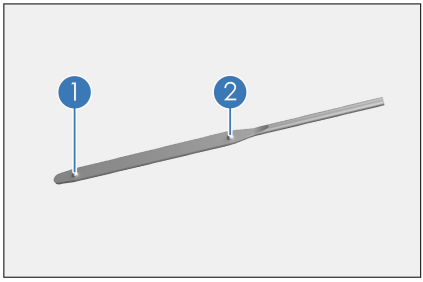
- Be sure to use engine oil that meets the specified standards for this vehicle.
- When purchasing engine oil, check the specifications indicated on the package to ensure that they meet the vehicle's requirements.

Recommended engine oil

- Engine oil plays a crucial role in ensuring engine performance and service life, so always use high-quality, well-refined engine oil to ensure reliable operation. It is recommended to use BYD genuine engine oil.
- Engine oil consumption may vary depending on driving habits, weather conditions, and road conditions. A new engine may consume more oil during the break-in period.

Check the engine oil

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface. Start the engine and allow it to reach normal operating temperature, then turn it off.
2. After shutdown for 10 minutes, remove the right cover plate, pull out the oil dipstick, and check whether the oil level is between markers ① and ②. Add or replace engine oil as needed.
3. Reinsert the oil dipstick.



- When the low oil pressure warning light is on, add engine oil promptly.

WARNING

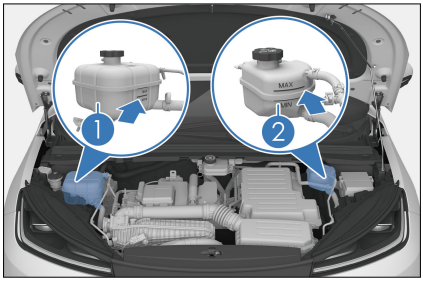
- Be careful not to spill engine oil onto any vehicle components.
- Engine oil, engine components, and the exhaust system become extremely hot during operation and may cause burns. Always wear protective clothing and handle components carefully when working in the engine compartment.
- Prolonged or repeated contact with used engine oil may cause skin disorders. If oil comes into contact with your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and clean water.

Cooling System

① Engine coolant expansion tank

② Motor controller coolant expansion tank

- It is required that the liquid level should be between the maximum (MAX) and minimum (MIN) marker lines of the expansion tank.
- Refill coolant to the MAX line if the level is below the MIN line. Check the cooling system for leakage.



- The coolant must always be of the same specification as the original, without adding any mixture. Different brands and types of coolant should not be mixed.

REMINDER

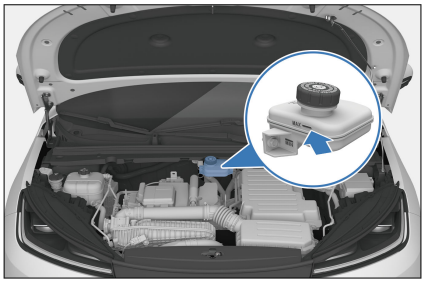
- Do not add any rust inhibitor or other additives to the cooling system for they may be incompatible with the coolant or the motor components.
- Before opening the coolant expansion tank, make sure that the engine, motor, high-voltage electronic control assembly, expansion tank cap, and radiator are all cooled down.
- Do not open the top cover of the under-bonnet PDB when adding the coolant.
- Fill the coolant with professional tools to prevent the liquid from flowing into the PDB.

Braking System

- Check the level in the fluid tank monthly, and change the brake fluid according to the travel time and mileage specified in Maintenance Schedule.
- Be sure to use the brake fluid of the same specifications as the original

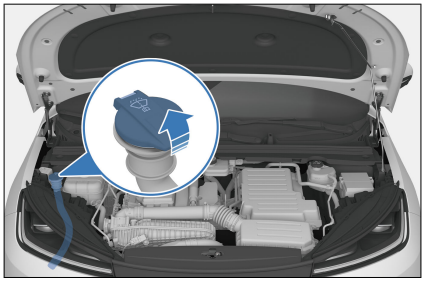
brake fluid, and different types of brake fluid must not be mixed.

- It is required that the level in the fluid tank should be between "MAX" (maximum level) and "MIN" (minimum level) marks.
- If the instrument cluster prompts low brake fluid warning, check for brake system leakage and brake lining wear.



Windscreen Washer

- During normal use, check the liquid level of the windscreen washer reservoir at least monthly.
- If the windscreen washer is used frequently, check the washer reservoir level regularly.
- Use high-quality windscreen washer fluid to improve cleaning performance and prevent freezing in cold weather.



- When refilling the washer fluid, use a clean cloth dipped in the windscreen washer fluid to clean the windscreen wiper blade. This helps keep the wiper blade in good condition.

CAUTION

- Do not inject vinegar-water solution or acid solution into the windscreen washer reservoir.
- It is recommended to use certified windscreen washer fluid.

A/C System

- The A/C system is a closed system, and any important maintenance work should be performed by professionals from a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- The following practices help ensure that the A/C system works effectively.
  - Check the radiator and A/C condenser regularly. Remove leaves, insects, and dust from the front surface of the A/C system. These deposits hinder the air flow and reduce the cooling effect. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
  - In cold months, turn the A/C on at least once a week for 10 minutes to circulate the lubricating oil in the refrigerant unit.
- If A/C cooling efficiency decreases, go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for maintenance.

CAUTION

- Whenever the A/C system is maintained, the maintenance station should use a refrigerant recycling system.
- The system can recycle refrigerant to avoid environmental pollution

CAUTION

caused by directly discharging refrigerant.

Wiper Blades

The blade strip, made of synthetic rubber, is a vulnerable part. Various service environment of the vehicle and usage habits of drivers can damage the blades. Therefore, please observe the following to ensure the service life of blades and driving safety:

- Do not use the windscreen wipers to remove ice from the windscreen. Use a dedicated ice scraper.
- Do not scrape the windscreen surface if it is dirty, greasy or waxy.
- Keep the windscreen surface clean. Do not scrape dust, sand, insects, or foreign bodies on the windscreen surface.
- During vehicle washing and body paint maintenance, there is no need to wax the windscreen, as the wax layer reflects light in bad light, affecting the line of sight and driving safety. After washing the vehicle, rinse the blade with plain water, and use special windscreen wax cleaner to remove the wax layer on the windscreen.
- To prevent excessive water pressure from damaging the blades, do not wash the blades directly with a water jet.

Maintenance Rules

- Clean windscreen and blade regularly (preferably once a week or once every two weeks).
- Wipe the wiper regularly (preferably once a day or once every two days). The windscreen must be fully wet before being wiped by the wiper blades. Therefore, spray the washer liquid in advance when it does not rain.
- Clean the windscreen with cleaners specially for this purpose.
- Promptly clean mud and insect carcasses stuck to the windscreen with a rag.
- When there are marks on the windscreen caused by gravel, maintenance must be carried out timely. It is recommended to use windscreen repair resin products and replace the windscreen if marks are too large or too many.
- Replace the wiper blades regularly, preferably once every six months.
- When cleaning the windscreen, raise the wiper arm in advance. The specific operation method is as follows:

  1. Go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Overhaul** to enable wiper check and then the wipers move to the service position.
  2. Grasp the upper end of the wiper arm and carefully lift the wiper arm and blade assembly.

Tyres

- For safe driving, tyres must be made and sized to fit the vehicle, with good tread and standard tyre pressure.

WARNING

- Using tyres with excessive wear or insufficient/excessive pressure can result in accidents, severe injury, or death.

WARNING

- Please follow all instructions in this manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Tyre Inflation

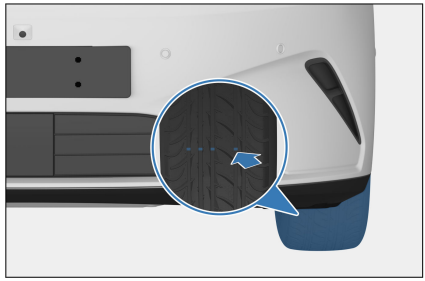
- Keep tyres properly inflated to provide the best combination of maneuverability, tread life, and driving comfort.
- Under-inflated tyres can cause uneven tyre wear, affect steerability and energy consumption, and are prone to leakage due to overheating.
- Over-inflated tyres reduce riding comfort and are prone to damage from uneven roads. In severe cases, the risk of tyre bursting poses severe threats to the safety of the entire vehicle. Over-inflation will also cause uneven wear and tear of tyres, affecting tyre service life.
- When tyres are cold, you can decide whether to replenish tyre pressure according to the tyre pressure values displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Measure tyre pressure while tyres are at ambient temperatures, which means that this should be done at least three hours after vehicle travel. If driving before the measurement is absolutely necessary, tyres can still be considered at ambient temperatures as long as the travelled distance is within 1 mile (1.6 km).
- It is normal that tyre pressure reading measured while tyres are hot (after travel of several kilometers) is 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 bar) higher than when tyres are cold. In that case, do not deflate tyres in order to achieve the specified cold tyre pressure reading; otherwise, the tyre pressure will be insufficient.

REMINDER

- The recommended cold tyre pressure is indicated on the label affixed to the driver's door frame.
- Tubeless tyres have a self-sealing function when they are punctured. However, as the leak is usually very slow, as soon as the tyre begins to depressurise, carefully look for the leak location.

Tyre Inspection

- Whenever checking tyre inflation, check tyres for damage, foreign body piercing and wear. Replace the tyre if
  - Bumps, or tread or side damage are found. Tyres must be replaced if any of the cases happens.
  - There are cracks on the side of the tyre. Tyre fabric or cord can be seen.
  - Tyre treads are severely worn.
- Tyre treads are cast with wear bars. When the tread is even with the wear bar, its thickness is less than 0.06 in. (1.6 mm). The adhesion of tyres worn to this extent is very small on wet roads.



- Tyres with exposed wear bars are experiencing serious performance loss and therefore must be replaced.

Maintenance

- In addition to proper inflation, proper wheel alignment also helps reduce tread wear.
- If uneven tyre wear is found, go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for wheel alignment check.
- Although the vehicle has been balanced in the factory, it needs to be re-balanced after running for a period of time.
- If there is some kind of continuous vibration at high vehicle speeds (above 50 mph, or 80 km/h), but not at low vehicle speeds, go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for tyre checks.
- If a tyre has been repaired, be sure to re-balance it.
- Always perform tyre balancing after new tyre installation or tyre replacement.

CAUTION

- Improper wheel balancers can become loose and fall off, which damages the vehicle or surrounding objects while driving.
- Improper wheel balancers damage the aluminium rims of the vehicle. Therefore, it is recommended to use the original wheel balancers.

Tyre Rotation

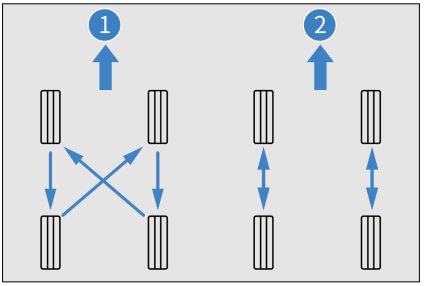
- In order to make tyres wear the same and prolong their service life, it is recommended to check the wheel tread wear inside and outside every 6,213 miles (10,000 km) and rotate tyres and conduct four-wheel alignment if necessary.
- Do not rotate tyres when a spare tyre* is used for the vehicle.
- After tyre replacement, go to a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for tyre pressure matching.

Directional tyres and wheels

- When purchasing replacement tyres, you may find that some tyres are "directional", which can only be rotated in one direction. If directional tyres are used, only the front and rear wheels can be swapped when rotating tyres.
- Tyre rotation is as shown:

① Non-directional tyres and wheels

② Directional tyres and wheels



Replacing Tyres and Wheels

- Original tyres maximise performance, while providing the best combination of maneuverability, driving comfort and service life.
- It is recommended to replace with original tyres at a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Replacement of tyres with different sizes, road ranges, rated speeds and maximum cold pressures (marked on the tyre side) or mixed use of radial tyres and diagonal tyres can reduce braking ability, driving force (ground adhesion) and steering accuracy.

- Unsuitable tyres affect the maneuverability and stability of the vehicle, and may lead to accidents.
- Do not replace only one tyre; otherwise it will severely affect the maneuverability of the vehicle.
- ABS works by comparing wheel speed. When replacing a tyre, use a tyre of the same size as the original tyre. The size and structure of the tyre affect wheel speed and may lead to uncoordinated system operation.
- If the wheel needs to be replaced, ensure that the specifications of the new wheel match those of the original wheel. New wheels are available for purchase at BYD authorised dealer or service providers. Please consult a BYD authorised dealer or service provider before replacing the wheels.

WARNING

- Please observe the following precautions to ensure proper vehicle maneuverability and control.
  - Do not mix radial tyres, bias belted tyres, or diagonal ply tyres on the vehicle.
  - Do not use tyres with dimensions other than those recommended by the manufacturer.

Fuses

All vehicle circuits are provided with fuses to prevent short circuit or overloading. These fuses are mounted in the under-bonnet and dashboard PDBs, respectively, which

- The under-bonnet PDB is located beside the left fender of the engine compartment.
  - Remove the upper cover of the under-bonnet fuse box, and turn over it to view the fuse box label.
- The dashboard fuse box is located in the shield under the dashboard.
- The positive fuse box is located above the low-voltage battery.
- Replacement of blown fuses with ones of higher amperage can significantly increase the likelihood of damage to the electrical system.
- If there is no spare fuse of the same amperage, use a fuse with lower amperage instead.

REMINDER

- Do not use fuses with amperage higher than the rated ampere value or any other solution to replace the fuses, as this can cause serious damage or even a fire.

07 WHEN FAULTS OCCUR

When Faults Occur.....234

When Faults Occur

Reflective Vest

- The reflective vest is in the tool kit. In case of emergency, always wear the reflective vest properly before you check for faults or handle accidents to ensure your safety.

If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted

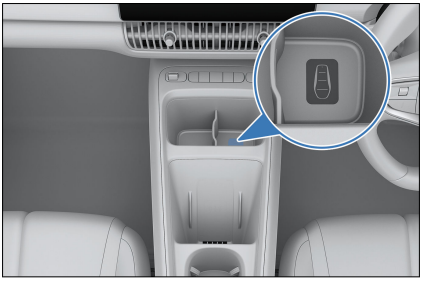
If the smart key indicator does not flash and the vehicle cannot be started using the start function, the smart key battery may be exhausted. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for battery change as soon as possible. In this case, you may start the vehicle in no power mode.

CAUTION

- Do not place the key in areas at high temperatures.
- Do not hit or slam the key with hard objects.
- Check for nearby radio stations, substations or airport radio transmitters that may interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
- After locking the vehicle and arming its anti-theft alarm system, keep the key away from the vehicle if you do not use the vehicle; otherwise the automatic card finding of the vehicle will consume the power of the low-voltage battery and the smart key.

Starting the vehicle when the electronic smart key runs out of battery:

1. Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.
2. Hold the smart key close to the designated sensor area at the bottom of the front cup holder.
3. Press the START/STOP button while pressing the brake pedal to power on the vehicle.



If a High Voltage Fault Occurs

If a fault occurs and the instrument cluster displays "Low-voltage electrical system failure. Please park safely and contact a service centre", pull over to a safe location immediately and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for assistance.

If the Vehicle Cannot be Powered on

Simple Checks

Before the inspection, make sure that the vehicle has been started following the correct procedures (see ***P114***) and check whether the fuel is sufficient. Also, check if the spare key can start the vehicle. If it can be started, the original key may have been damaged. Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider. If all keys cannot be used, the key or smart key

system may fail. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

If the vehicle does not respond after pressing the key

1. Press and hold the microswitch for 10 seconds to see if the vehicle or the instrument cluster responds.
2. If the vehicle or the instrument cluster has no response, check to see if the low-voltage battery terminals are tight.
3. If the low-voltage battery has been tightened, turn on the front interior lights. If the interior lights do not come on or are dim, this indicates that the low-voltage battery SOC is low.
4. In this case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

If the motor drives the engine to crank at a normal speed but the engine fails to start

1. Try starting the vehicle again.
2. If the engine still fails to start, it may be caused by fuel flooding due to repeated starting attempts, a malfunction in the battery management system) module, or a failure in the motor module or other related components.
3. If the engine still cannot be started, adjustment or repair is required. In this case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

Starting the Engine After Fuel Flooding

- If the engine fails to start, repeatedly attempting to start it may lead to fuel leakage.
- If the engine becomes flooded, perform the following operations manually:

1. When the "OK" indicator stays on, the vehicle is in ECO mode, and the engine is stopped, manually switch the gear to Neutral.
2. Press the brake and accelerator pedals to the deepest positions at the same time, and wait for several seconds to activate the cylinder cleaning.

- If the engine has been started for 5 seconds and still cannot start, wait for several minutes and start it again.
- If the engine still cannot be started, adjustment or repair is required. In this case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- If the engine fails to start repeatedly and the prompt "Engine start failed, please drive to safe area and stop to check" is displayed on the instrument cluster, do not to restart the engine, otherwise the generator and wiring system will overheat.

If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving

- Maintain the lane position and gradually slow down the vehicle. Carefully drive the vehicle off the road to a safe place
- and turn on the hazard warning light.
- Try to start the engine again.

If the Engine Is Overheated

If the high engine coolant temperature warning light turns on and power loss

is found, it indicates that the engine is overheated. Follow the instructions below:

1. Drive the vehicle away from heavy traffic and park in a safe place. Turn on the hazard warning light, engage EPB, and shift into Park. Turn off the A/C and place a warning triangle behind the vehicle according to the local regulations.
2. If the high engine coolant temperature warning light is on, stop the engine. If hissing sounds and coolant spraying occur in the engine compartment, open the bonnet only after the steam has dissipated. If no coolant is sprayed out, confirm whether the cooling fan is working before and after the stop. If not, turn off the power.

WARNING

- To avoid personal injury, keep the bonnet closed until no coolant flows out. The flow of coolant indicates high pressure of the engine.

3. Check the radiator, hose and vehicle underneath for obvious coolant leakage.

WARNING

- When the engine is running, keep hands and clothes at a certain distance from the rotating fan and engine pulley.

4. In case of coolant leakage, stop the engine immediately and contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
5. If there is no obvious leakage, check the expansion tank. Wait until the engine coolant has cooled to the normal temperature range before opening the expansion tank. With the engine running, add coolant up to the upper scale mark, secure the cap, and run the engine for two to three cycles (with the fan operating and the A/C off). After the coolant temperature drops to the normal range, check the coolant level again. Add to the appropriate scale if necessary. A serious loss of coolant indicates a leakage. In this case, contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider for inspection immediately.

WARNING

- Do not open the expansion tank when the engine and radiator are hot. Hot steam or liquid may spray out and cause serious injury.

If the Vehicle Needs Towing

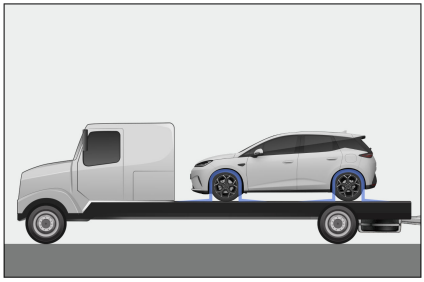
If the vehicle needs towing, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider, a professional towing service, or the organisation you joined for roadside assistance.

WARNING

- The vehicle must not be towed by other vehicles using only ropes or chains.

Recommended transporting method:

- Flatbed trailer
  - If the vehicle fails and needs towing, a flatbed trailer is recommended. Make sure that four wheels of the vehicle is off the ground, because towing the vehicle on front or rear wheels alone may damage high-voltage components.

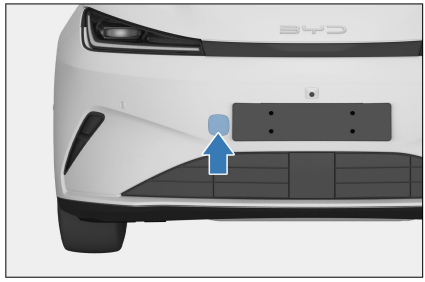


CAUTION

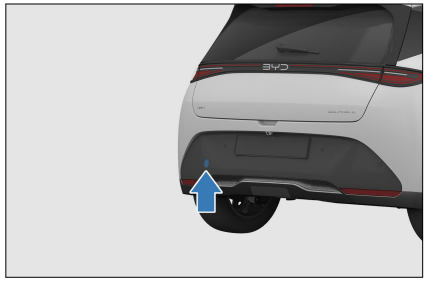
- When moving a vehicle with a flatbed trailer, make sure that the vehicle is properly secured to prevent it from sliding back.
- It is recommended to use professional tie-down straps and tensioners, and employ the over-the-wheel method to secure the vehicle.
- When fixing the vehicle, avoid routing tie-down straps, ropes, or other securing devices through the wheels or attaching them to the chassis, suspension, or any other part of the vehicle body to prevent damage.
- Ensure the vehicle's wheels are immobilised during transport to prevent potential damage.

Tow Eye

The front mounting point is shown in the illustration.



The rear mounting point* is shown in the illustration.



- If the vehicle needs rescue, contact a professional rescue or the customer service number.
- In emergency situations where the vehicle needs to be towed for rescue, follow the precautions below. If these precautions conflict with applicable regulations, always adhere to applicable regulations to prevent vehicle damage or personal injury.
  - The towing vehicle must be in good conditions and the towed vehicle in Neutral gear. The towing speed must be no more than 3 mph (5 km/h).
  - Never use jerking actions to pull the vehicle.
  - The towed vehicle must not carry any person except for the driver.
  - Both towing and towed vehicles must have their hazard warning lights on.
  - To avoid damages to the vehicle, only the in-vehicle tow eye can be used.

- The distance between the towing and towed vehicles must be more than 4 meters but less than 10 meters.
- The width and weight of the towed vehicle must not be greater than those of the towing vehicle.
- When towing, ensure the surroundings are clear and spacious, and that no one is near the towing device.
- When freeing the vehicle, control to make it travel in the direction of tow force. Dragging the vehicle from the side or vertically is prohibited.
- The towed vehicle must be controlled by a driver inside the cabin, with the steering and braking systems in normal conditions.

WARNING

- Never rescue a stuck or high-centred vehicle with tow eyes. Call a professional rescue or the customer service number.
- If the steering or braking system of the towed vehicle fails, contact a professional rescue or call the customer service number. Do not tow the vehicle directly.

If a Tyre Goes Flat

- Maintain the lane position and gradually slow down the vehicle. Drive the vehicle off the busy road to a safe place.
- Park on solid, flat ground and avoid highway forks.
- Engage EPB and shift into Park.
- Power off the vehicle and turn on the hazard warning light.
- Be sure to have all passengers get off the vehicle and ask them to go to a safe place away from crowded traffic.
- To prevent slipping, secure the vehicle by wedging the tyre diagonally against the flat tyre.

CAUTION

- Do not continue driving with a flat tyre. Even a short distance of driving with a flat tyre can cause irreparable damage.

In-Vehicle Tools

In-vehicle tools are stored in a tool box under the boot cover flap.

The tools consist of a warning triangle, a reflective vest, a lug nut cap remover, a tyre repair kit, and a tow eye.

REMINDER

- In an emergency where you need to service the vehicle yourself, you must know how to use these in-vehicle tools and their locations.

Placing the warning triangle

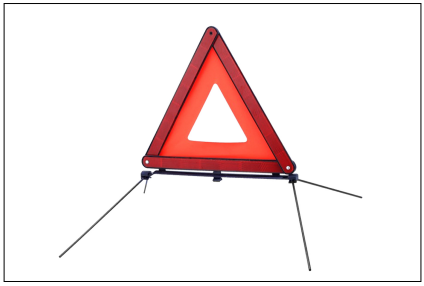
The warning triangle is used to warn vehicles coming from behind and to avoid collisions due to high speed or late braking.

REMINDER

- When parking for repair, place the warning triangle correctly as per local regulations. The red side of the warning triangle should face the oncoming vehicles to warn them to avoid danger.
- After using the warning triangle, put it back for future use.

How to use the warning triangle:

1. Take the warning triangle out of its box.
2. Attach the ends to form a triangle.
3. Mount the supports as shown.



Using Tyre Repair Kit*

- The tyre sealant is used to seal small cuts, especially cuts in tread pattern. It is just an emergency solution for you to drive to the nearest service centre, and only for short emergency stretches, even if the tyre is not deflated.

WARNING

- The tyre sealant is only suitable for minor damages of tyres. If a wheel is damaged, do not use the tyre repair kit.
- Tyre sealant is highly flammable and harmful to health. Take necessary precautions to prevent fire and avoid contact with skin, eyes, and clothing; keep away from children; and do not inhale its vapour.

In case of contact with tyre sealant:

- If tyre sealant comes into contact with the skin or gets into the eyes, thoroughly flush the affected body part immediately with plenty of clean water.

WARNING

- Change contaminated clothing immediately.
- In case of an allergic reaction, seek medical attention immediately.
- If tyre sealant is ingested by accident, rinse mouth thoroughly and drink plenty of water immediately. Do not induce vomiting, but seek medical attention immediately.

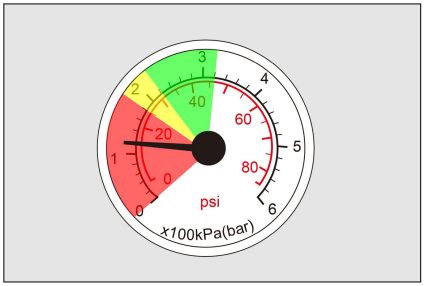
Using the tyre repair kit

- Refer to the labels on the inflator and tyre sealant bottle for usage of the kit.
- If the inflator needs to be connected to a power source, plug the inflator into the vehicle's 12 V socket, start the vehicle, and turn on the inflator. The tyre sealant is then filled through the inflator hose into the tyre along with air.

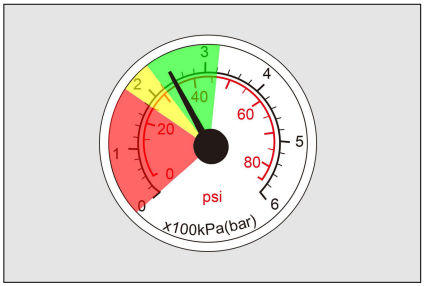
REMINDER

- Make sure the inflator switch is off before plugging into the 12V socket of the vehicle.
- Do not use the inflator continuously for more than 10 minutes at a time.

- Observe the tyre pressure reading on the inflator.
  - If the tyre pressure does not reach 180 kPa (1.8 bar) within 10 minutes (red area shown in the illustration), turn off the inflator. You are recommended to contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.



- When the tyre pressure is between 180–320 kPa (1.8–3.2 bar) (green and yellow areas shown in the illustration), remove the kit as soon as possible and drive at a speed below 50 mph (80 km/h) within 1 minute, with the furthest driving distance not exceeding 10 km, to let the tyre sealant evenly distributed within the tyre.



- Stop to check the repaired tyre and the tyre pressure reading on the inflator.
  - If the tyre pressure is greater than 220 kPa (2.2 bar), drive to the nearest service centre at a speed below 50 mph (80 km/h).
  - If the tyre pressure is between 130–220 kPa (1.3–2.2 bar), repeat the process to fill the tyre sealant into the tyre and observe the tyre pressure gauge reading on the inflator.
  - If the tyre pressure does not reach 130 kPa (1.3 bar), contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- Using tyre repair kit on damaged tyres is only an emergency solution. Please change the tyres at a professional repair centre as soon as possible. It is recommended that you contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider and inform the maintenance technician that tyre sealant has been used.
- After repairing a tyre with the tyre repair kit, it is recommended that you purchase new tyre sealant and inflation hoses at a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.
- Avoid hard acceleration and high-speed turns.
- Do not exceed the 50 mph (80 km/h) maximum speed limit and replace flat tyres as soon as possible. Do not drive further if the vehicle experiences strong vibration, unstable performance, or noise.
- Avoid bumping or squeezing the tyre repair sealant to ensure stable product performance.
- It is recommended to replace the tyre sealant when it approaches the shelf life on the packaging, or has been impacted/compressed.

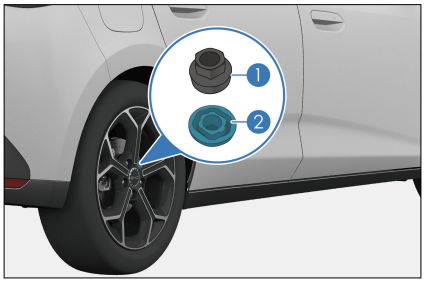
Removing the Anti-theft Lug Nut*

Each wheel is fitted with an anti-theft lug nut*, and you can use the lug nut socket in the tool kit to remove it.

How to remove:

1. Take out the lug nut cover removal clamp, and remove the cap.

2. Take out the anti-theft lug nut socket ① from the tool kit and connect it to the lug nut ②. After loosening the socket, the anti-theft lug nut can be removed.



08 TECHNICAL DATA

Vehicle Data..... 244
Information..... 249
Declarations of Conformity..... 252

Vehicle Data

Specifications

Dimensions

Item	Parameter
Length	164 in. (4160 mm)
Width (excluding side mirrors)	72 in. (1825 mm)
Height	62 in. (1575 mm)
Wheelbase	103 in. (2610 mm)
Front track	62 in. (1580 mm)
Rear track	62 in. (1580 mm)
Front overhang	34 in. (860 mm)
Rear overhang	27 in. (690 mm)
Approach angle	14°
Departure angle	21.5°

Vehicle mass

Item	Parameter	
Trim level	**A**	**B/C**
Kerb weight	3175 lb (1440 kg)	3428 lb (1555 kg)

Item	Parameter	
Trim level	**A**	**B/C**
Front axle load	1984 lb (900 kg)	2105 lb (955 kg)
Rear axle load	1190 lb (540 kg)	1323 lb (600 kg)
Maximum allowable total mass	4277 lb (1940 kg)	4497 lb (2040 kg)
Front axle load at maximum allowable total mass	2304 lb (1045 kg)	2414 lb (1095 kg)
Rear axle load at maximum allowable total mass	1973 lb (895 kg)	2083 lb (945 kg)
Number of occupants	5	

Engine

Item	Parameter
Model	BYD472QC
Type	Four-stroke ignition
Displacement (L)	1.498
Rated power (kW/rpm)	72/6000
Maximum net power (kW/rpm)	72/6000
Maximum torque (N · m/rpm)	122/(4000-4500)
Emission standard	EU 6E

High-voltage battery

Item	Parameter		
Trim level	**A**	**B**	**C**
Type	Lithium iron phosphate battery		
High-voltage battery rated capacity (Ah)	37.5	47.7	54

Drive motor

Item	Parameter
Model	TZ210XYB
Type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Drive type	Front-wheel drive
Rated power/speed/torque (kW/rpm/N·m)	55/5000-18000/105
Peak power/revolving speed/torque (kW/rpm/N · m)	120/5457-10000/210

Vehicle power performance and economic efficiency

Item	Parameter	
Trim level	**A**	**B/C**
Maximum design speed	112 mph (180 km/h)	
Maximum gradeability	30 %	
Fuel consumption	4.3 L/100km (WLTC)	

Wheels and tyres

Item	Parameter	
Trim level	**A**	**B/C**
Tyre specification	215/65 R16	215/50 R18
Tyre pressure	2. 5 bar (250 kPa)	2.6 bar (260 kPa)
Wheel dynamic balance requirement	＜ 10 g	

Wheel alignment values (at kerb weight)

Item	Parameter
Front camber (°)	-0.69±0.75
Total front wheel toe-in (°)	0.26±0.16
Kingpin inclination angle (°)	12.48±0.75

Item	Parameter
Kingpin caster angle (°)	5.14±0.75
Rear camber (°)	-1.01±0.75
Total rear wheel toe-in (°)	0.14±0.50

Braking system

Item	Parameter
Free stroke of brake pedal	0.12-0.23 in. (3-6 mm)
Front brake disc standard thickness	1.02 in. (26 mm)
Front brake disc minimum thickness	0.94 in. (24 mm)
Rear brake disc standard thickness	0.47 in. (12 mm)
Rear brake disc minimum thickness	0.39 in. (10 mm)
Front friction plate standard thickness	0.39 in. (10 mm)
Front friction plate minimum thickness	0.08 in. (2 mm)
Rear friction plate standard thickness	0.33 in. (8.5 mm)
Rear friction plate minimum thickness	0.09 in. (2.5 mm)

Seats

Item	Parameter
Seatback angle set for front seats	23°±2°

Item	Parameter
Forward and backward moving spaces for front seats	7.5 in. (190 mm) forward and 2.8 in.(70 mm) backward from the designed position; slide rail inclination: 4.5°
Normal service conditions of front seatbacks	7.5° forward and 41° backward from the designed position
Seatback angle set for rear seats	25°±2° for outboard seats and 20°±2° for the middle seat
Forward and backward moving spaces for rear seats	No slide rail
Normal service conditions of rear seatbacks	25°±2° for outboard seats and 20°±2° for the middle seat, fixed and non-adjustable

Recommended oil/fluid types and amount

Item	Parameter
Engine oil type for BYD472QC	C5 0W-16 or higher
Engine oil amount for BYD472QC (L)	4.2 (with engine oil filter replacement) 4.0 (without engine oil filter replacement)
EHS special transmission gear oil type	EHSF-2LV
EHS special transmission gear oil amount (L)	2.9±0.1
Brake fluid type	HZY6
Brake fluid amount (mL)	1150±50
Motor and motor controller coolant type	Ethylene glycol aqueous solution
Motor and motor controller coolant amount (L)	4.7±0.5
Engine coolant type	Ethylene glycol aqueous solution
Engine coolant amount (L)	7.0±0.5

CAUTION

- The recommended oil types have been tested and approved by BYD. Using other oil types may compromise vehicle performance,

CAUTION

and could cause malfunctions or damage to components.

Information

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

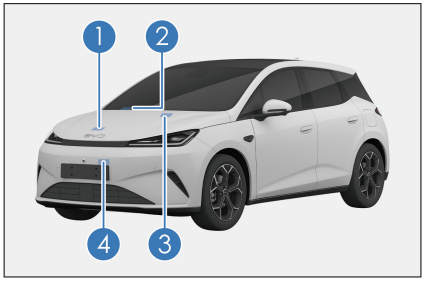
Positions of VIN stickers:

① Besides the lock ring of the front bonnet inner panel

② On the right of the windscreen cross sill

③ On the rear side of the motor

④ On the front bumper beam

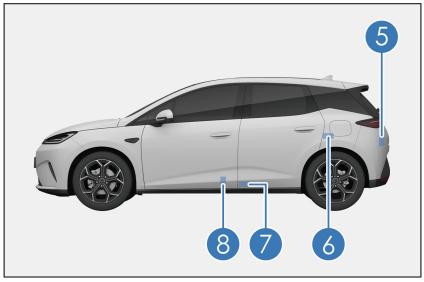


⑤ On the inner panel of the boot lid

⑥ On the sheet metal surface of the left rear wheel envelope

⑦ On the sheet metal surface inside the left rear door sill

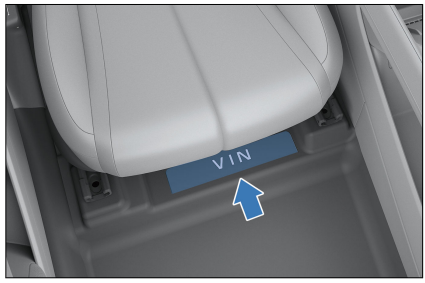
⑧ On the sheet metal surface at the lower left corner of the front left door



Position of VIN engravement:

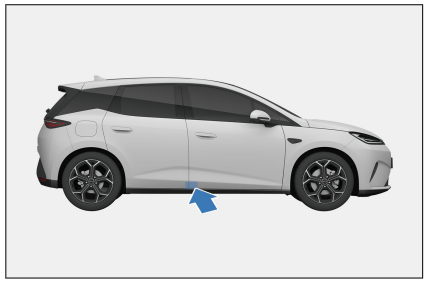
VIN is engraved under the front right seat.

After connecting the VDS, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) can be found in the upper right corner of the screen for the corresponding model. For details, please refer to the VDS operation manual.



Vehicle Nameplate

The vehicle nameplate is located on the lower part of the right B-pillar.



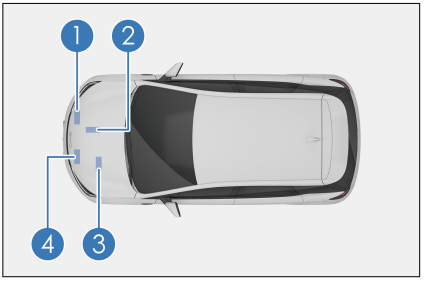
Model and Serial Number of Engine and Drive Motor

① The engine model and serial number are affixed to the right of the bonnet latch on the inner panel of the bonnet.

② The engine model and serial number are engraved on the intake side of the cylinder block joint surface.

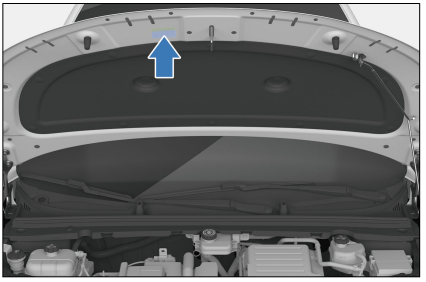
③ The drive motor model and serial number are engraved on the motor housing.

④ The drive motor model and serial number are affixed to the left of the bonnet latch on the inner panel of the bonnet.

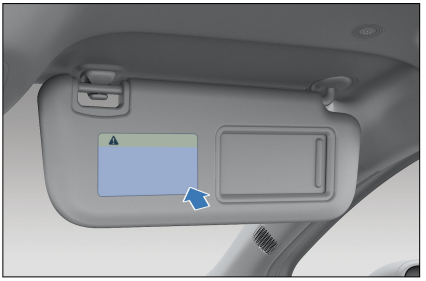


Warning Labels

A/C system and cooling fan label



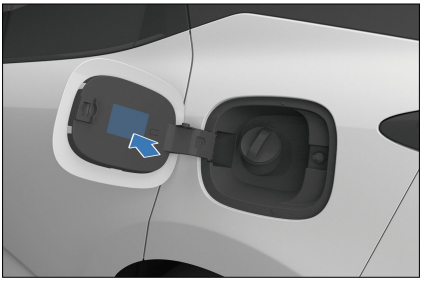
The airbag warning label is printed on the left sun visor.



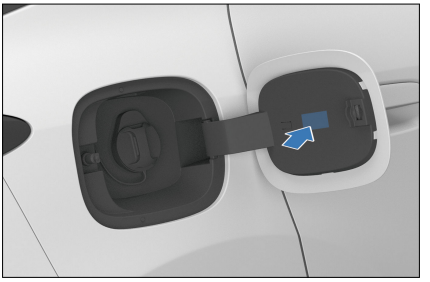
The tyre pressure label is attached below the right B-pillar lock ring.



The gasoline indication label is attached on the inner side of the fuel door.



The charging warning label is attached on the inside of the charge port door.



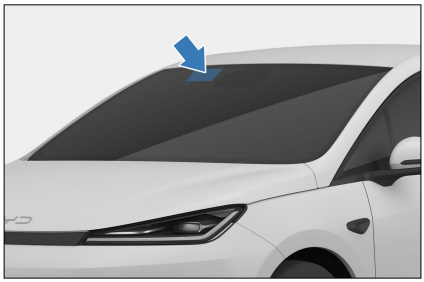
Warnings on Strut Mechanisms

Support mechanisms on this vehicle can be dangerous. Do not disassemble or service them yourself. Labels on these products are defined as follows:

Label	Definition
	Warning
	Pressurised cylinder
	Refer to owner's manual
	No open flame
	Not to be serviced by users
	Recycle separately (Note: Contact a BYD authorised dealer or service provider.)
	No shaking or cranking

Transponder Mounting

The transponder mounting position is located in the upper left of the windscreen.



CAUTION

- Do not overlap the sticker transponder with the glass frame or other objects.

Declarations of Conformity

Declarations of Conformity

Radio Frequency



The vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare that the RF Modules are in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at https://cn-prod.byd.com/eu/eu-doc.

Component Name	Frequency	Maximum Power
Wireless charger module	127±20 kHz	15 W
Tyre pressure monitoring transmitter module	434 MHz	10 mW
Interior detection antenna	125 KHz	10 W
Smart Key	434 MHz	10 dBm
ECALL 4G antenna	703–960 MHz 1.71–2.69 GHz	23 dBm
NFC device	13.56 MHz	2.5 W
Bluetooth antenna	2.402–2.48 GHz	8 dBm
4G antenna	703–960 MHz 1.71–2.69 GHz	23 dBm
Wi-Fi antenna	2.402–2.482 GHz 5.17–5.835 GHz	16 dBm
Front mmWave Radar	76–79 GHz	4.5 W
Corner mmWave radar	76–79 GHz	4.5 W

Smart Key

	Uzbekistan Model: D1–92
	EU countries Model: D1–92
	Brazil Model: D1–92 This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and may not cause interference with duly authorised systems.
R 214-118832	Japan Model: D1–315

Numerics

12 V Auxiliary Power..... 206

A

A/C System Maintenance..... 227
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)..... 173
Adaptive Cruise Control..... 133
Adaptive Front Light (AFL)..... 76
Adjusting Side Mirrors..... 73
Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually..... 69
Airbag Overview..... 15
Ambient Light..... 83
Anti-theft Alarm System..... 30
Around View Monitor (AVM)*..... 174
Auto Power On/Off*..... 116
Automatic Emergency Braking*... 146
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)..... 123
Automatic Vehicle Washing..... 219

B

Bill Box..... 202
Blind Spot Detection*..... 161
Brake Fluid..... 226
Break-in Period..... 105
Button Function Definitions..... 198
BYD Assistant..... 189

C

Carrying Luggage..... 110
Centre Console Cubby..... 203
Charging Port Immobiliser System 99
Charging Precautions..... 87
Charging Safety Warnings..... 86
Check before Charging..... 90
Child Presence Detection (CPD)*. 170
Child Protection Lock..... 62
Child Restraint Systems..... 21
Coolant..... 226

D

Data Collection and Processing..... 32
Discharging Instructions*..... 95
Door Bins..... 202
Door Open Warning*..... 162
Driver Monitoring System (DMS).. 169
Driving..... 116
Driving Precautions..... 124
Driving Safety Precautions..... 106
Driving Safety Systems..... 180

E

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) Switch..... 120
Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)*..... 158
Emergency Vehicle Locking with the Mechanical Key..... 60
Engaging EPB manually..... 120
Engine Oil..... 225

F

Fire Prevention..... 113
Forward Collision Warning*..... 143
Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA)*... 149
Front Cross Traffic Braking (FCTB)* 151
Front Cup Holder..... 204
Front interior lights..... 82
Front Passenger Airbag Switch..... 79
Front Storage Compartment..... 202
Fuel Selection..... 107
Fuel-Efficient Driving..... 118
Fuses..... 231

G

Gear Shift Controls..... 119
General Charging Troubleshooting 89
Gestures and Responses..... 189
Glasses Case*..... 203

Glove Box..... 203
Grab Handles..... 204

H

Hazard Warning Light Switch..... 80
High-Voltage Battery..... 101

I

If a Tyre Goes Flat..... 238
If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted 234
If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving..... 235
If the Vehicle Needs Towing..... 236
Indicator/Warning Light Description 42
Indicators/Warning Lights..... 40
Infotainment Touchscreen..... 186
Installing Child Restraint Systems. 22
Instrument Cluster..... 38
Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)*... 141
Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)*..... 143
Interior Cleaning..... 219
Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode..... 26

L

Lane Departure Assist (LDA)..... 156
Lead Car Departure Notification (LCDN)..... 155
Light Switches..... 74
Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key..... 56
Low-Voltage Battery..... 103

M

Maintenance Cycle and Items..... 210
Maintenance Instructions..... 210
Maintenance Plan..... 210
Manual Vehicle Washing..... 218
My Car*..... 190

O

Opening and Closing the Bonnet. 224
Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts..... 49

P

Paint Maintenance Tips..... 217
Parking Assist System..... 176
PIN to Drive..... 31
Power Window Switches..... 77

R

Rear Collision Warning*..... 164
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)*.... 166
Rear Cross Traffic Brake*..... 167
Rearview Mirror..... 73
Refueling..... 108
Regular Maintenance..... 215
Replacing Wiper Blades..... 72
Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning..... 111

S

Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life..... 109
SD Card Slot..... 205
Seat Belt Overview..... 12
Seat Precautions..... 63
Seatback Pockets*..... 203
Self-Maintenance..... 221
Smart Access and Start System..... 61
Smart Charging..... 94
Smart Key..... 52
Snow Chains..... 126
Starting the Vehicle..... 114
Steering Assist Mode Settings..... 70

Steering Wheel Switches..... 67
Sun Visor..... 204

T

Target SOC Setting..... 98
Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)..... 153
Transponder Mounting..... 251
Tyre Pressure Monitoring..... 172
Tyres..... 228

U

USB Ports..... 205
Using AC Charging Piles*..... 92
Using DC Charging Piles*..... 93
Using Mode 2 Charging Cable*..... 90
Using Seat Belts..... 12

V

Vehicle Cleaning..... 218
Vehicle Corrosion Prevention..... 216
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
..... 249
Vehicle Servicing..... 216
Vehicle Storage Precautions..... 223
Vehicle Use Suggestions..... 106

W

Wading into Water..... 112
Warning Labels..... 250
Window Control Switch on
Passenger's Side..... 79
Windscreen Washer..... 227
Windscreen Wipers and Washer..... 70
Wiper Blades Maintenance..... 228
Wireless Phone Charger*..... 206

Abbreviations

Abbreviations

Terminology	Full Name	Terminology	Full Name
EDR	Event Data Recorder	EPB	Electronic Parking Brake
AVH	Auto Vehicle Hold	ECU	Electronic Control Unit
ISOFIX	International Standards Organisation Fix	HEV	Hybrid Electric Vehicles
EV	Electric Vehicle	NORMAL	Normal
SPORT	Sport	ECO	Economy
MAX	Maximum	E-Call	Emergency Call
SOC	State of Charge	ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control
FCW	Forward Collision Warning	TSR	Traffic Sign Recognition
ELKA	Emergent Lane Keeping Assist	LDP	Lane Departure Prevention
LDW	Lane Departure Warning	LDA	Lane Departure Assist
RCTB	Rear Cross Traffic Braking	DOW	Door Open Warning
BSD	Blind Spot Detection	DMS	Driver Monitoring System
TPMS	Tire Pressure Monitoring System	AVM	Automatic Vehicle Monitor
AVAS	Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System	TCS	Traction Control System
MCB	Multi-Collision Brake	ABS	Antilock Braking System
ESC	Electronic Stability Controller	VDC	Vehicle Dynamics Control
HHC	Hill Hold Control	MIN	Minimum
HBA	Hydraulic Brake Assist	HDC	Hill Descent Control
CDP	Controlled Deceleration for Parking Brake	CST	Comfort Parking
VIN	Vehicle Identification Number		

BUILD YOUR DREAMS

Edition date: 06.2026 EN_V0